AL-BAHER

# CONNECT







Let's remember	
eme 1: I discover my	(5)
-iie in my world	(14)
Review (1)	(57 <sub>)</sub> (105 <sub>)</sub>
e Places Around the Mar	
	(114)
We're on the move	(167)
Review (2)	(213)
y: ri searches for home Listening Texts	(219) (237)
Model Answers	(240)
	on Reader: e Places Around the Wore eme 2: Myself and others How we use our world We're on the move Review (2) y: ri searches for home Listening Texts

# Lesson (1)

### LET'S REMEMBER

### Body

skeleton هيكل عظمي blood دم heart قلب muscles عضلات stomach

### Animals

### Transportation

cab
ferry
معدیة
subway
rocket
ship

### Technology

website موقع على الإنترنت blog مدونة شخصية vlog مدونة فيديو instant message

email

#### Food

beans وفول garlic وفول spices المحاوية المحاوية

#### Clothes

### Environments

رسالة فورية

بريد الكتروني

coastal ساحلية desert محراوية polar قطبية mountainous

### **Environmental Problems**

انهيار التربة erosion التعرية flood فيضان tsunami

### Study the following:

- Cairo is the largest city in Egypt.
- You shouldn't eat too many candies.
- Airplanes will use solar energy in the future.
- Today we're talking about recycling.
- We often eat our meals with bread.

### Lesson (2)

### LET'S REMEMBER

#### Vocabulary

primary colors	ألوان اولية	presentation	عرفن
secondary colors	ألوان ثانوية	congestion	يزدام
vertebrates	فقاريات	creativity	الم الم
invertebrates	لا فقاريات	ice caps	وتم حليدية
tidal energy	طاقة المد والجزر	amphibians	روائيات
cold-blooded	ذوات الدم البارد	lantern	فانوس
right hemisphere	النصف الأيمن (للمخ)	citizenship	المواطنة
neighborhood	الحي السكني / المنطقة	Upper Egypt	صعبد مصر
touch-type	يكتب على لوحة المفاتيح باللمس	blind	كفىف
metropolitan areas	المناطق الحضرية	deaf	امم
densely populated	ذات كثافة سكانية عالية	senet	
sparsely populated	دات كثالة سكانية منخفظية	topic	لعبة السينيت موضوع

### Read and learn

- Our skeleton is made up of all the bones in our body.
- There are five types of vertebrates mammals, reptiles, amphibians, fish, and birds.
- Red, yellow, and blue are primary colors.
- When you touch-type you can type without looking at the keyboard
- Congestion can be a problem in big cities.
- 6 If the polar ice caps melt, sea levels will rise.
- Senet is the world's oldest board game.
- 3 The sea is a good place to get tidal energy.

#### Let's remember

### Character Listen and read.

: Hi Adam, what are you doing? Tarek

Hi Tarek. I'm doing my homework. Adam

We have to give a presentation about

different types of communication.

: That sounds interesting! What type Tarek

are you studying?

I like reading about lots of different Adam

topics, so I think blogs are interesting.

It's great that people can write about their ideas and share

them online.

: Llike viogs. People make some great videos sometimes! Tarek

There are lots of different ways to communicate now. We can Adam

send messages more quickly than people could fifty years

Yes, it's much quicker and easier. When do you have to Tarek

present your work?

On Tuesday, but I'm nervous. I don't like talking to lots of Adam

people.

Don't worry, you're good at explaining things. I can help you Tarek

practice. Remember to speak slowly, smile, and try to look

confident!

Thank you, that's useful advice! Adam

### Steps of making a presentation about:

### (Neighborhood)

First, we took some photos of the area we live in.

Then, we looked at the photos on our laptop.

Next, we chose the best photos from the laptop and printed them.

Finally, we made a class display of our work.





### | | emember

### **Past Simple Tense**

Form The second form of the verb

Regular verbs ( We add (d / ed / ied):

smile \_\_\_ smiled cook \_\_\_ cooked study \_\_\_ studied

Irregular verbs \ The form changes:

be \_\_\_ was / were

have --- had

### Possessive

(Adjectives / Pronouns)

Subj	ect pronouns	Possess	ive adjectives	Possessive	pronouns
1		my	The same of the sa	mine	مني
	He	his .		his	فلكه
	She	her		hers	ملكها
	lt	its	> + houn		ملگنا
	We	our		ours	
+	You	your		yours	ملگك - ملكتم
	They	their_	) .	theirs	

### Plural



Nouns can be singular or plural.

### Rules for plural

Linies is	a poesses
Regular plural: Weadd (-s)	
hunthor	sister
Nouns ending in (o, ch, s	h, s, x or z), we add (es).
L. Halos	box boxes
dich-	watch watches
Nouns ending in (a conso (ies).	nant + y), we remove the (y) and add
baby babies	city cities
Nouns ending in (a vowe	el + y), we add (s).
donkeys	boy
e trregular plural: The nou	in changes. (There is no rule.)
man	child children
goose geese	foot
person people	ange
Some nouns don't cha	deer deer
sheep	deer
fish fish	Punnent Plus (5) - First Term

### Punctuation Marks



### Capital letters

- At the beginning of the sentence
- Names of people, countries, cities, months and days of the week
- Wael lives in Alexandria in Egypt.



- \* At the end of the sentence
- I love my school,



### Question mark

- \* At the end of the question
- Do you like cooking, Mona?



#### Comma

- To divide items in a sentence
- I play football, tennis, and basketball.



### Exclamation mark

- To show strong feelings or emotions
- You are doing a great job!

## General Activities

### Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

Tarek What are y	nv 1	t different tynes	. We have to give of communication.
a 2)			
Tarek : What type	are you studying	?	
are interes	ng about lots of d		
Tarek : 1 like 4)	. People m	ake some great v	rideos sometimes.
	orrect answer fro		
1. Yesterday, we			a French lesson.
a) has	had	having	d have
2. Last Sunday, I	100	a present	ation about reptiles.
a) makes	made	making	d)make
3. Hike		nake some great	videos sometimes!
a) blogs	vlogs	poems	d)backs
4. "Men" is the plur			
a) woman	man	child	d person
5. Cairo is the			city in Egypt.
a) large	larger	largest	d more large
6.			are cold-blooded
a) Reptiles	Mammals	Birds	d)Caws
7. A jellyfish is a/ar	1		
a) invertebrate	amphibian	vertebrate	d)bird:
B. People who are			can't hear well.
a) deaf	blind	dumb	d)lame
9. Red and blue ar			colors.
a) secondary	b) primary	( ) first	disecond

- 3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.
- largest in the Egypt city is .
- 2. solar energy will. Airplanes future the in use.
- a talking recycling about today .
- eat our often bread with meals.
- 5 the moment. doing are. What you at. ?
  - 4 Complete the table.

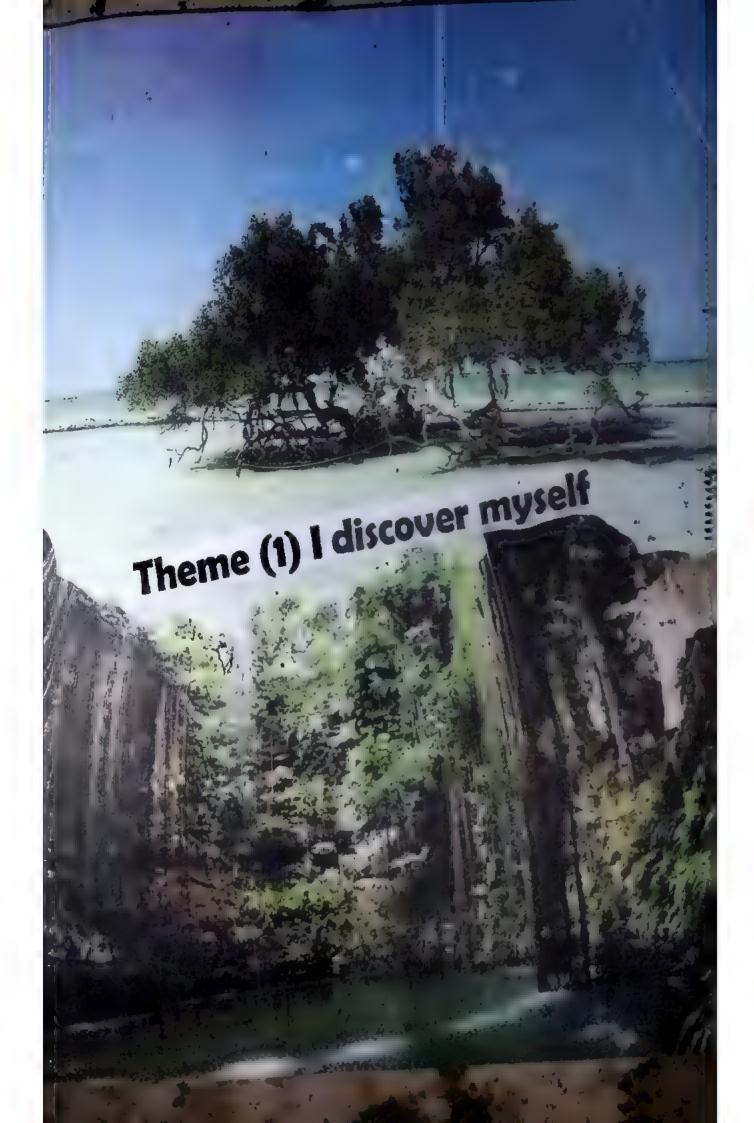
Singular	Plural	Singular	Piural
baby	m - can kana	tomato	
sheep	1 (1911) 9900 * 100	regionalia maraperia.	geese
	children		cities
man	The second second	woman	

5 Punctuate the following:

the store sells clothes jewelry and bags

do fares and yasmine live in luxor

will you stay in amman when you visit jordan





Unit the hand world



#### Wadi el Gemal National Parks

understand a story about a visit to a

ecosystem

understand and use

read and understand a story about a mangrove ecosystem

listen to and understand an interview with a wildlife photographer.

understand and use

to write about how to stay healthy.

read and understand a story about a grassland ecosystem.

ter it in a confirmations, offers,

possibility, and obligation.



### A GREAT TRIP!

L 5/4"





forest



marine





freshwater



rainforest غاية مصاره



grassland أرض عشبية

خدل (غيرعميق)

غابات المانجروت

الى اكسيد الكربون

إبراض

يجثمع

#### Extra vocabulary

storm trip عاصقة area South Sinai منطقة thick shallow سميك sait water illnesses مياه مالحة diseases community أمراض butterflies mangrove forests فراشات species soil أنواع / فصائل roots carbon dioxide جنور

### Important expressions and prepositions

along the coast بامند د الساحل interact with بامند د الساحل grow out of ... high out of بنبو من .... high out of على من .... safe home for النواع من .... species of النابع من .... النواع من المنابع من المنابع

### Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

	Present	Past	P.P
arrive		arrived يصل	
protect		protected	arrived
interact		interacted بتفاعل	protected
survive	قيد الحياة	survived يبقى على	interacted
irregular	verbs	an analy60	survived
	Present	Dood.	
fight	ماري/ يتشاحر	Past	P.P
grow	, —, , <u>—</u> , , —	fought يقاتل/ ي	fought
		grew grew	grown
16 Unit (1) Li	fe in my world	Hale	

Help your child identify these words.

صليد طللك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

### Lesson (1)

### O Listen and read.

### () المنا المندرسية إلى حديقة بيق الوطنية (حيه عنوان)

Nabq is a very big National Park in South Sinai. Along the coast here, there are 4.8 kilometers of mangrove forest, which is the largest in the Red Sea. We went there to learn why mangrove forests are so important for the marine ecosystem.

... بر بر كبيره جدا ى حنوب سياء. على طول الساحل هنا ، هناك ٤.٨ كينومتر من غانات أن عنات المنجروف بالنسبة سيصاه البيخي المحدي

When we arrived at the beach, we saw trees growing out of the sea! Most trees can't grow in salt water, but mangrove trees can. They have amazing roots which grow high out of the water. These roots help them get oxygen. When I touched the trees leaves, they felt very thick. These special leaves stop the plants losing water when it's very hot.

سد. در ما بالمراه المالحة من من المراه المالحة والتي تدمو عاليا في المداه المالحة من الشخاء المتحددة والتي تدمو عاليا في المداه المالحة هذه من الشخاء المتحددة من المداه مساحة و في المداء عدد الدور في المداء عندما بكون الحو حارا حدا.

We learned that mangrove trees help the environment in many ways. Mangrove trees protect the non-living things and the living things in the marine ecosystem.



علمنا أن أشجار المنحرةف تساهد البينة بطرق عديدة. فأشجار المنجروف تُحمى الكانيات غير الحية ه الكانتات الحية في النظام البيني البحري

When there are storms, their deep roots stop the sand washing away. The forests are also a safe home for many animals.

عندما تكون هناك عواصف ، قال حدورها العمدة ثميع الرمال ، ، الأنجراف, الغارات هي أبضا موطن أمن

Hundreds of different kinds of fish, birds, insects, and other animals live in the mangrove forests. We could see many little fish swimming in the shallow water among the roots of the trees, where bigger fish and other animals couldn't catch them. That is how mangrove trees help young fish survive.

تيش منات الأنهاع المختلفة من الأسماك والطيور والحنران و لحيوانات الاخرى في عادت المنح و ف يكتنا أن نرى العديد من الأسماك الصغيرة تسبح في المباه الصحنة بين حدور الاشحار ، حسا لا تستطيع السماك الكمارة و لحيوانات الأخرى صيدها، هذه هي الطريقة التي تسعدها شحار المنحووف الاسمال المغيرة على اليقاء.

The leaves of the mangrove trees take four times more carbon dioxide from the air than other kinds of trees. Mangrove trees help us with global warming.

تأخذ أوراق أشجر المنحروف أربعة أضعاف ثاني أكسيد الكربون من أنهواء من أنواع أخرى من الأشحار. تعاعدنا أشجار المنحروف في حالة الاحتباس الحراري.

We also saw small yellow flowers on the mangrove trees. There were a lot of bees and other insects on them. Bees make a special honey from the mangrove flowers. People say mangrove honey helps fight some illnesses and diseases.



رأيناً أيضا الزهور الصفرة الصغيرة على اشجار المتحروف كال هدك لكثير من النجل و الحشرات الأحرى عليها الزهور الصفرة الصغيرة على اشجار المتحروف. تقول الناس يساعد عسل المتحروف في محارسة عليها، تصنع النجال عسلا خاصا من أزهار المتحروف. تقول الناس يساعد عسل المتحروف في محارسة بعض الأمراض و الأسقام.

What I liked most about the mangroves was seeing all the different species making a community. The plants, animals, and insects all interact with each other to survive. I've never seen so many different species of butterflies! It was a great day.

أكثر ما أعجبنى في أشجار المنحروف هو رؤية كل الأنواع المختلفة التي تكوَّن محتمع. تثفاعل النبانات الغرما أعجبنى في أشجار المنحروف هو رؤية كل الأنواع المختلفة من والعيوانات والحشرات مع بعضها المعض للبقاء على فيد الحياد لم أر قط الكثير من لأنواع المختلفة من العراضات مثل الذي وأبتها إلقد كان يوما والعا

# General Activilies

بعن الاستماع في بهاية الكتاب

1	L	isten and ci	rde the lorrect a	aswer from	1, ,	
1.	Nab	q National P	ark is in South			
	a)	London	b) Sinai	-, Alexand	ria 💮	
2	Alor	ng the coast	here, there are 4.8	3 kilometres o	f	forest.
		orange		, mango	0	mangrove
3.			s are so importan	t for the		ecosystem.
Ο.		marine	b) freshwater		1.1	forest
4.		ngrove trees				water.
٠,		salt	b) cold	. Ct fresh	d)	hot
7			uplete the dialog	`	ite m tho	bot.
2	1	teda aira (o)	The same of the sa			
			1F	•		
, i		Hi Sara.	Where did you go	yesterday?		
		I went o	n a school		to Nabq	National Park.
d		Where i	s Nabq National P	ark?		
н	ıra	It is in S	outh 2)			
뉛	)	Why did	I you go there?			
	, 1	To learn ecosyst	why mangrove fo em.	rests are so i	mportant	for the 3
\ \		What ar	e some of the livir	ng things in a	marine ed	cosystem?
	1	Hundre	ds of different kind	ds of ⇒		birds.

insects and other animals.

### 3 Chanse the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

4	The mangrove forest	is the			. in	the Red
	a) smallest	h) tallest	c)	GHOTTOGE	- M.J. B	dino
2	Mangrove trees are	SO SO		for the	marin	e econ.
	a) bad	b) awful	c)	important	d) h	elpless
	Mangrove leaves are	very				
	a) thin	b) thick	c)	slim	d) fa	at
1	Mangrove trees help	young fish to				
	a) eat	b) survive	c)	swim	d) s	leep
5	Bees make a specia	1		from the	mang	rove flowers
	a) sugar	b) sugarcane	c)	honey		_
6	In an ecosystem, livi	ng things		with	non-	-living things
	a) go	b) watch	c)	interact		
1	Animals and plants	are .		* pros esp	**!* (* * .	things
	a) living	b) non-living	c)	lively	d) li	ves
	Mangrove trees are					
	a) fresh	b) salt	c)	muddy	d) c	old
C	Mangrove forests				narine	e ecosystem
	a) kill	b) protect	c)	damage	d) d	estroy
10	The leaves of mangiother trees	rove trees take n	nore	•	from	n the air than
	a) carbon dioxide		c)	nitrogen	d) w	ater
11	. Mangrove honey he	lps fight some			a	nd diseases
		b) illnesses	c)	plants	d) m	redicines
1,7	. The plants, animals,			with eac	h othe	er to survive
	<ol> <li>interact</li> </ol>	b) protect	c)	damage	<b>d)</b> sa	

#### Lesson (1) -

### 4 Order the words to make correct sentences

- 1 trees survive faangrove fish young help
- 2. plants the animals Animals Animals an area in is and al-
- 3. 'thick leaves are Mangrove very -

### 5 Read the following text and answer the questions

An ecosystem is all the animals and plants in an area. The ecosystem can be as small as a pond or as be, as a forest. In an ecosystem living things such as plants and animals interact with non-living things such as water, rocks, and soil. The different species in an ecosystem make a community, and they all need each other to survive

#### A) Choose the correct answel from: . . or

- 1. The main idea of the text is a/an
  - a) ecosystem b) lake
- e) sea
- a) river
- 2. Living things are things such as plants and
  - a) rocks
- b) soil
- c) water
- anımals رك
- 3. The underlined word "big" is the opposite of
  - a) huge
- b) large
- c) small
- u) heavy

#### B) Answer the following questions.

- 4. What is an ecosystem?
- 5 Why do the different species in an ecosystem need each other?

### 6 Write a text of [11] V (30) words about

The mangrove forests

#### Guiding elements:

(important - marine ecosystem - salt water - roots - thick)

Help your child deal with such questions.

Al-BAHER - Connect Plus (5) - First Term 21

Lesson (2)

### LANGUAGE

### Relative Clauses جمل الوصل

**Usage** 

To describe a noun.

ستدم لوصف أدسم

### who - which - where

الدي / التي (للعاقل) الذي / التي

We use "who" for people.

E.g. I have a triend who lives in the Sinai Peninsula.

e.g. We met a man who works in a garden.

which الذي / التي (لغير العاقل)

Weuse"which" for things.

e.g. Malak has a book which is about plants in the Sinai Peninsula.

سيث (للعكان) • where

We use "where" for places.

e.g. We learned a lot about the area where they live.

(حظ:

<sup>الفر</sup>ق بين (اسم المكان والاسم الغير عافل)

الم المكان: يعبر عن نشاط نقوم به داخل المكان،

لَّنِ النِّسِمِ النَّبِرِ عَامِلُ: لا يُعِبِرُ عَنْ نَشَاطُ نَقُومٍ بِهِ دَاخِلُ الْمُكَانِ،

This is the shop weere I buy my needs.

فا (السراء) بساط شوع به داخل البحل

This is the shop which opens very early.

فاأمتح المحل) ليس يساط يقوم به دادن المحل.

22 Unit (1) Life in my world

Help your child understand and use relative فاطلك أن يغهم ويستخدم جمل الوصل، clauses.

### **General Activities**

### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1.	Do you remember m	ny cousin Ali	lives in ti	ne Sinai Perlinsula:
17	a) where		c) what	d) who
2	We learned a lot abo			they live.
_		b) who	c) where	d) which
3.	They live close to a	•	is	called Mount Sinai.
0.		b) which	c) where	d) when
4.	I have another cous	•		lives near a wadi.
**	a) what	b) which	c) where	d) who
5.		tem		is normally dry.
	a) where	b) who	c) which	d) whose
6.	We met a man			works in a garden.
	a) who	p) whose	c) which	d) where
7.	I have a friend			lives in Alexandria.
	a) which	b) where	c) who.	d) when
8.	Cairo is the city			my uncle lives.
	a) which	b) when	c) who	d) where
9.	Mona always gives	us figs	á	are from her garden.
	a) whose	b) who	c) which	d) where
10	These are the boys		are ve	ery good at science.
	a) which	b) where	c) who	d) when
11	. This is the store		you can buy se	ome sweet oranges.
	a) where	b) who	c) which	d) whose
12	. This is a medicinal	plant	is g	ood for tired people.
	a) which	b) where	c) who	d) what

					Unit (1)
73	Do you know my aut	nt			"ACS III New !
	a) which	b) where	c)	who	- 7
14	I know a nice place			9	we can go for a hou.
	) where	b) which	c)		A MUO
15	Younis is a boy				wants to be a scientis
	a) which	b) who	c)	WILEIE	III Whon
10	Malak has a book	is about m	edicina	al plants	s in the Sinai Peninsul
	a) who	b) where	c)	which	d) when
	Do you know the ho	use			my grandparents live
	a) that	b) who	c)	where	_d) which
٠ ن	I have a friend				is very good at tennis
	a) who	b) which,	c)		d) where
19.	This is the house		* * * * * *		· · · · · · · · I was born
	a) when	b) where	c)	who	d) which
20.	have a sister				is very kin
_	a) which				d) when
2	Read and comple	ite with the	correct	term.	
1.1	This is my friend				(which) I love
2. 1	We met a boy				(where) lives in Cairo
3. 1	This is the mountain			( who )	) is called Mount Sinal
4. I	have a son		(whi		ery good at swimming
5. \$	She has a book				out marine ecosystem
6. 7	This is the mall				ı can buy many things
7. \$	Sara is the girl				) wants to be a doctor
8. 7	This is the shop			(wh	nere) opens very early

24 Unit (1) Life in my world

Help your child deal with such questions. مالد طفقاته أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسلة.



### A RAINFOREST **ECOSYSTEM**

### Key vocabulary



Amazon rainforest canopy :

فصيد د الأما والأسطال



wildlife



a custard apple



photographer

ديسور قولو



exhibition

ميال فيل

#### Conjugation of verbs

hrregular verbs

	Present .	Past	P.P
cut down	ويعقب	cut down	cut down
learn	يتعلم	learned / learnt	learned / learnt
show	يبين / روضع	showed	shown



### **Main Points**

Malak Habio has been to the Amazon rainforest.

زارت ملك حبيب دباب الامازون المطيرة

2 The Arr azon rainforest is a very in content ecosystem.

تعد غابات الاصرون المصبرة نظاما بينيا هام جدا

3 All the living things in the rair forest need each other.

**تعتاج جميع** الكاندات الحدة في الغابة المصيرة لي بعضها للعظ

Oustard apple trees are important to the rainforest ecosystem because animals eat the fruit to survive.

فاكهة الكاسترد العِندية مهمة للنظام النبي لأن الحيونات في الله على عدد و

Sirds and animals take the trees seeds to other parts of the forest.

نتقل الطبو اثات لذه الأشجار إلى أحزء احرى من لف،

3 All the parts of the forest ecosystem interact

ماعل جبيع أجزاء البطام السي للعادات مع بعصيد ببعض

People are cutting down the trees so animals will lose their homes and food.

يقوم الناس بقطع الأشجار، لذلك سوف تعقد الحبوات مو عنها وصعابه،

#### Lesson (3)

### Parts of speech

### Noun

a word that is the name of a person, place, thing or idea.

🔪 Ahmed - Egypt - cat - goal - luck

### Adjective

a word that describes a noun.

🔪 happy - funny - beautiful - lucky

Adjective	الصعة	Abstract noun	إسم عسا
beautiful	نميل	- beauty	حسان
patient	مبور	patience	J.
lucky	حظوظ	a luck	<u>च्च</u>
successful	جح	∪ success	•

#### Study the following:

I wanted to show people the Control of the Amazon rainforest.

You need to have a lot of patience.

Luck is also quite important.

- He doesn't want to wait because he isn't a parant person.

They weren't hat day. They didn't see any wild animals.

Malak's exhibition was a great such sec.

### General Activities

الكتاب للمناع في نهاية الكتاب

### Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d,

		nortant		
The Amazon rainfo	prest is a very Im	portant		
system	b) ecosystem	c) style	d) rain	
All the	thin	igs in the rainfore	est need each other	
.i) life	b) living	c) leave	d) non-living	
Custard apple tree	s help many ani	mals		
¿) die	b) sleep	*	d) grow	
The animals take t	the trees	to othe	r parts of the forest	
a) leaves	b) stems	c) seeds		
2 Read and comp	lete the dialog	with the words in	n the box.	
photograp	her - do - Custai	ralappie lecosys	tem- plav	
			1 2	
Malak . Yes, of	an I ask you a fe	w questions:	•	
Student: What do you 1)				
I'm a wildlife 2) I like to take photos of the forests.				
Student : What's the rainforest?				
Malak this a very important 3)				
		ortant trees there?	?	
Malak 4)	Conservate stone to term was		trees.	
3 Choose the co	rrect answer fro	om a, b, t, or 0.		
Fares doesn't war	nt to wait becaus	e he isn't a	person.	
patience	b) patient	c) success	d) beauty	
People are cutting		***	the trees.	
, in	b) on	c) down	d) at	
og Unit (1) Life in my world				

	Lesson (3)					
	There is so much					zon rainforest.
3.	a) beauty	b) beautiful*	c)	success	d)	successful
	My grandad does		·	to learn	abo	out computers.
4.	a) patience		c)	beauty	d)	beautiful
5.	Malak's exhibition					
	a) successful	b) success		lucky		
6.	They weren't	, that da	ay. T	They didn't see	any	y wild animals.
0.	a) luck		c)	beauty	d)	success
7	I wanted to show			of the	4ma	zon rainforest.
,	a) success	b) beauty	c)	luck	d)	patience
8.	You need to have					
	a) patience				d)	patient
9.	The Amazon rainf					
	a) ecosystem	b) river	c)	desert	<b>d</b> )	system
10.	The animals take	the trees		to other	part	ts of the forest.
	a) stems	b) leaves	c)	roots	d)	seeds
4	4 Order the words to make correct sentences.					
1.	cut down - Peop	the rainfore	st	trees - in		
2.	2. important - very - The Am rainforest - a - is - ecosystem .					
3.	3. is - Luck - important - also - quite					
4.	4. a - is success - exhibition - rour - great					
5.	to - You - have - need - patience - a lot of					

### **S** Read the following text and answer the questions.

Malak is a wildlife photographer. She has been to the Amazon rainforest. She wanted to learn more about the Amazon rainforst, because a lot of people are cutting down the trees.

The Amazon rainforst is a very important ecosystem. All the living things in the rainforest need each other. Custard apple trees help many animals survive. The animals take the trees seeds to other parts of the forest. Malak wanted to show people how all the parts of the forest ecosystem interact.

#### A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1. Malak is a wildlife
  - a) engineer b) photographer c) researcher d) teacher
- 2. The underlined pronoun "She" refers to
  - a) Malak b) Malek c) Sara d) Mona
- The main idea of the text is the Amazon
  - a) River b) rainforest c) company d) animals
- B) Answer the following questions.
- 4. Why did Malak want to learn more about the Amazon rainforest?
- 5. What did Malak want to show people?
  - 6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

The Amazon rainforest

#### **Guiding elements:**

( important - ecosystem - living things - Custard apple trees - trees seeds - interact )

# Lisson (4)

# MANGROVE TREE

### Co Listen and repeat.





kingfisher

عبر الرفراف



pollen



worm

الاصوم (حيوان ثدبي مابي)

#### Definitions

You feel unhappy because you're thinking about problems or things that could happen.

Sumprison Something happens and you didn't think it would happen

confused. You find it difficult to understand something.

#### Conjugation of verbs

	Present	Past	P.P
fly	وطف	flew	flown
sit	يجلس	sat	sat
come out	المارية المارية	came out	come out
hear	ea.,	heard	heard
bring	ian	brought	brought

Help your child identify these words ساعد طفلك الرينمرف على هذه الكلمات

Al-BAHER - Connect Plus (5) - First Term 31

### Read and listen to the story. In the mangrove tree

في شحرة المنجروف

A kinglisher was visiting her old friend, the fizard, in a mangrove tree. She flew down and sat next to the lizard. "You look sad," said the kingfisher to the lizard. "What's the matter?"



ان الله الله المنظر المنطقة المنطقة السطلية، في شطرة المنطروف, طار إلى أسفل وحلس بحسب السطلية، وقال طائر الرفواف للسطلية "أنت تبدين حزينة" . وسألها "ما الأمر؟".

"People came and cut down some trees. The trees protected the worms and the fish we eat, but now it's difficult to find food." "Oh no!" said the



kingfisher, looking worried. "I'm hungry." Suddenly, a dugong came up out of the sea.

قال المدينة جاء الدس و قطعوا بعض الأشحار. الأشجار تحمى الديدان والأسماك التي بأكلها ، ولكس الاسمال التي بأكلها ، ولكس الاسمال التي بأكلها ، ولكس الاسمال العنور على الطعام! قال طائر الرفواف "أوه لاإ ا ، وكان ببدو قلقا، "انا جابع." فجاة ، خرج حيوان الاطمام من البحر،

"Hello Dugong!" said the lizard, surprised. "Hello Lizard. Hello Kingfisher. I have some bad news," said the dugong. "What is it? Are the people back again?" asked the kingfisher. "Yes, they are. Can't you hear them?" replied the dugong.

قلب السحيبة بالدهاش "موحية أنها الإطوما" قال حيم للأطوم "موحيا أيتها السحلية. موحيا طائو الرفوف, بدى عض الأخيار السيئة "، سأله طانه المفاف "ما هي هذه الأخيار؟ هن عاد الناس موة اخرى؟" قال الأطوم "نعم، ألا يمكنك أن تسمعهم؟" .

The lizard and the kingfisher listened carefully. They heard trucks and people shouting. "Oh no. How many more mangrove trees are they going to cut down?" cried the lizard.

استمعت كلا من السحلية والر<mark>فراف بعناية. سمعوا الشاحنات والناس يصرخون. بكت السحنية فائلة أقوم الا</mark>. كم عدد أشجار المنجروف التي سيقومون بقطعها؟".

#### Lesson (4) -

At that moment, the animals heard a buzzing sound. There were three bees buzzing around the tree. One of the bees flew close to the other animals and said,"The people are not going to cut down more trees.



في نبك المحظة ، سمعت المعيوانات صوت طنين. كان هناك ثلاثة نحلات تطنّ حول الشجرة، طارت إحدى اسحلات بالقرب من الحيوانات الاخرى وقالت: "لن يقطع الناس المزيد من الأشجار.

They are going to plant other mangrove trees. They understand that they made a mistake. They have learned that the mangrove trees are important, so they're planting new ones. They brought us here to help the trees grow."

سوف يزرعون أشجار المنجروف الأخرى. فهم يفهمون انهم ارتكنوا حطاً. لقد تعلموا أن أشجار المنجروف مهمة ، لذا فهم يررعون اشحارا جديدة. لقد أحضرونا إلى هذ لمساعدة الأشجار على النمو. ا

"How will you help the trees grow?" asked the dugong, confused. "We carry pollen from one plant or tree to another and that helps them to make seeds," explained the bee.

سال الاطوم في حبرة "كيف سنساعدون الاسجار على النمو؟"، اوضحت النحلة قائلة "نحمل حبوب اللقاح .

من نبات أو شجرة إلى أخرى وهذا يساعدهم على صنع البذور"،

"So, is life going to get better here?" asked the kingfisher. "Yes, it is," replied the bee, smiling. "Good!" said the lizard and the kingfisher together. "We're hungry!"

سأل طائر الرفراف "اذا، هل سنسير الحدة بشكل أفضل هنا؟". أجابت النحلة مبتسمة "نعم، سنكون جبدة!" قال السحلية وطائر الرفراف معا. "نحن جالعان!"

# General Activities

1 Listen and circl	Marie and the second	swer from a, b,	c, or	d
1 Listen and circl	e the correct a	131101		
20W A	visiting her old f	IBIO CO		3.016
	b) worm	c) kingfisher	d)	pollen
<ul><li>a) dugong</li><li>2. The lizard looked</li></ul>	Uj			. 40.1
	b) happy	c) ugly	d)	exited
<ul><li>a) sad</li><li>3. People came and</li></ul>	•			some trees
a) planted	b) watered	c) grew	d)	cut down
4. It's difficult for the	~,			to find food
a) lizard	b) crow	c) snake	d)	dugong
•		amabe or d		
(2) Choose the co	rrect answer in	unit i i i i v		
1. The trees	F   1 44   LOGOZEPHIN   1115	. (((()))43011914(0000142-114943414 )	1	animals food
a) damage	b) protect	c) destroy	d)	kill
2. The animals can	t find enough			to eat
a) trees	b) food	c) water		juice
3	erse fie espido(Sape dypelojibi	do -1115 delibertiescos bedelecdo mames		feel unhappy
a) Worried	b) Surprised	c) Hungry	d)	Funny
4. " " means so				
		c) Thirsty	d)	Hungry
5. People came an				some treet
a) turned on		c) turned off	d)	flew
6. The kingfisher k				nin0
a) Worry		c) worried	d)	worrying buzzini
<ol> <li>There were three</li> <li>a) birds</li> </ol>		N		
a) Unios	b) animals	c) Worms	d)	bees

### \* Road to following text and answer the quantions.

The kingfisher visited her friend, the lizard, in a mangrove tree. The lizard was sad. See explained that when the people came to the mangrove forest, they cut down the trees. After that, it was difficult for the lizard to find food to eat. Dugong told his friends the kingfisher and the lizard that the people were back. They could hear trucks and people shouting. The animals were worried. Then they heard some bees buzzing around the tree. A bee told the animals what was happening. The people learned that the trees were important, and that they were part of the ecosystem.

#### A) Choose the correct answer from a, b cot d.

- 1 The lizard was
  - happy
- (a) excited
- sad
- surprised

The animals could

trucks and people shouting.

- a) listen
- b) watch
- c) see
- d) hear

- The underlined word "Sne" refers to the
  - a, kingfisher
- 5) lizard
- ;;) dugong
- \_ bee

#### B) Answer the following questions

- 4. Where does the lizard live?
- 5. Why was it difficult for the lizard to find food?

### 4 Union the words to make correct sentences.

says The dugong that are the people back

you the trees How help will grow ?

- 3 came down trees some People and cut
- part Mangrove are trees the ecosystem of

# Lesson (5)

### I HAVE A HEALTHY HEART

11 16

بيث الزلادة

PIL

صر ادبة

يص بالغ (راشد)

ن أكسيد الكربون

#### Key vocabulary

blood قلب blood

arteries شرایین circulatory system

veins ارردة carbon dioxide

#### Extra vocabulary

new born اکسجین

air مواء adult .

healthy البشر healthy

regularly ضوء الشمس ' regularly

nutrients معادن

#### Conjugation of verbs

#### Regular verbs

	Present	Past	P.P
carry		carried	carried
move		moved يتحرك	moved
cycle		cycled برکب دراجة	cycleJ
exercise		exercised بتمرن	exercised
relax		relaxed بستريح	relaxed

#### Irregular verbs

	Present		Past	' · P.P
beat		beat بنبض		beaten
keep	* As Bushaman	kept يحافظ على		kept ·

#### Lesson (5) -

### Important expressions and prepositions

similar to move to think about good for يفكر في instead of protect from بدألا من aet sick ?... How often يمرض (بصب بمرص) about 100.000 times work harder حوالي ١ مرة

D Look and read.

### Are plants similar to humains

هل النبانات تشبه البشر?

ينتقل إلى

مقيد ل

بحمل من

3 3 05

In some ways, humans are similar to plants. Think about our circulatory system. Instead of water, our veins and arteries carry blood around our bodies. Arteries move blood away from our heart. Veins carry blood to it. The nutrients and oxygen that we need are in our blood. But we don't use carbon dioxide like plants do.

Humans need sunlight, too. We can't make our own food, but we get vitamin D from sunlight. This can help protect us from getting sick. Sunlight also makes a lot of people feel happy!

في سيس المحروب مشمه المسر المانات. فكر في بطام الدورة الماس الماء، لدينا الأوردة والشرايين التي تحمل الدم في اتحد احساديا بعقل الشريس الدم بعيدا من قلوبنا. تحمل الأوردة الدم إليه, المواد الفذائية المائات المائلة المعلى المائلة المعلى المنافعة المسلم المائلة المائ عدمي ايسر ان درو الشمس، العما لا يسكر - ع ديماس ، لكنما تعصل على قسارس و من البعة تسمس هذا يمكن إ ساسه في جمية با الراء العلم مو الشمس الكثير من

Help your child read about his / her body

#### Read and learn.

Your heart beats over 100,000 times a day! So it's important to keep your heart healthy. When you walk, run, swim, or cycle, you make your heartwork harder. If you exercise regularly, your heart works better and you can get the minerals, nutrients, and oxygen you need more easily.



البلاً ... . ر (۱۱) یا بار در دی بیوم ایدان من المهم الحفاظ علی صحبهٔ قسب عبدما نمسی او تحری و تا با در با اندر حیه فهد بحمل المنب بعشل تحهد اکبر آزدا شاریت باینظام فهد بحمل قبیل یعمل شکل قصل حیث بمکما اصفه ول علی المعادن وابعت بیر العدانیه والاکسخین بطریقهٔ اکم سهوله

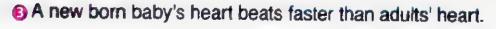
#### Read this information about the heart

• Your heart beats about 70 times a minute.

ينبض قليك حوالي 70 مرة في الدقيقة

? The heart moves blood around your body.

حرك القلب الدم حول جسمك,



قلب المولود الجديد ينبض أسرع من قلب البالغين

Veins carry blood to the heart.

الأوردة تحمل الدم إلى القلب.

### HOW TO ELLP YOUR HEART HEART III

- Eat healthy food like fruit, vegetables and fish
- Play sportswith your friends. Exercise regularly in the gym or outside.
- 1 Keep moving. Walk, run, swim or ride your bike
- Take some time to relaxand be quiet.

# **General Activities**

	Listen and circle			
	Eat healthy food like	fruit, vegetab	ies and	•
		) burger	c) cake	d) fish
	Play			with your friends.
	_	) cards	c) chess	d) games
2	Keep moving. Walk,	•	ride your	
	a) horse	) donkey	c) bike	d) scooter
	Take some time to	,		and be quiet.
		) relax	c) sleep	a) run
_		te the text w	ith the words i	n the box.
2				
	exerc	ise - oxygen	- beats - heart -	nose
	Your heart 1)		over 100,0	000 times a day! So it's
imn	ortant to keep your h	eart healthy.	When you walk	, run, swim, or cycle,
-	make your 2)			work harder, if you
3)				A
$\cup_{j}$	•	regularly, yo	our heart works	better and you can get
	minerals, nutrients, a		our heart works	you need more easily.
		and 4)		you need more easily.
the	Choose the corr	and 4) ect answer fi	rom a, b, c, or	you need more easily.
the	Choose the corre	and 4) ect answer fi d our bodies i	rom a, b, c, or	you need more easily.
the	Choose the corr	and 4) ect answer fi d our bodies i	nour c) bo	you need more easily.
3 1.	Choose the corre	and 4) ect answer fi d our bodies i	n our les c) bo	you need more easily.  d.  nes d) tendons d away from our heart.
3 1.	Choose the correlation Blood travels around a) veins and arteries	ect answer fi d our bodies i es b) musc	n our les c) bo move bloo nents c) Ve	you need more easily.  d.  nes d) tendons d away from our heart.
the 3.	Choose the correlation Blood travels around a) veins and arteries	ect answer fi d our bodies i es b) musc	n our eles c) bo move bloo nents c) Ve	nes d) tendons d away from our heart.
the 3.	Choose the correlation Blood travels around a) veins and arteries a) Bones	ect answer find our bodies it b) musc b) Ligar	n our eles c) bo move bloo nents c) Ve	nes d) tendons d away from our heart. ins d) Arteries arry blood to our heart.
the 3.	Choose the correlation of the co	ect answer find our bodies it b) musc b) Ligar	n our les c) bo move bloo nents c) Ve	d.  d) tendons d away from our heart. ins d) Arteries arry blood to our heart. teries d) Toes
the 3 1. 2. 3.	Choose the corre Blood travels around a) veins and arteris a) Bones a) Veins Blood carries	ect answer find our bodies it b) musc b) Ligar on Finge	n our les c) bo move bloo nents c) Ve	d.  d) tendons d away from our heart. ins d) Arteries arry blood to our heart. teries d) Toes around our bodies.



#### 4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

In some ways, humans are similar to plants. Think about our circulatory system. Instead of water, our veins and arteries carry blood around our bodies. Arteries move blood away from our heart. Veins carry blood to it. The nutrients and oxygen that we need are in our blood. But we don't use carbon dioxide like plants do.

Humans need sunlight, too. We can't make our own food, but we get vitamin D from sunlight. This can help protect us from getting sick Sunlight also makes a lot of people feel happy!

<ul> <li>A) Choose the correct answer from a</li> </ul>	.b.	c ord
---	-----	-------

Our arteries carry	away from our hear
	,

- a) food
- b) water
- c) blood
- d) oxygen

- 2. We get vitamin D from
  - a) plant
- b) soil
- c) sunlight
- d) water

- 3. The underlined word "sick" means
  - a) healthy
- b) ill
- c) fine
- d) nice

- B) Answer the following questions.
- 4. What's the main idea of text?
- 5. How does blood move to your heart?
- 5 Order the words to make correct sentences.
- 1. play | with sports my friends .
- 2. a minute about Your beats 70 times heart .
- Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

How to keep your heart healthy

**Guiding elements:** 

( healthy food - sports - exercise - relax )

# Lesson (6)

# WRITING: LINKING WORDS

# Read the following text.

Seleem is a healthy boy. He loves sports. He plays tennis, football, and basketball. He eats healthy food like fruit, vegetables, and rice. He doesn't eat a lot of chocolate because he knows that this food isn't very healthy. In the evening, he wants to relax, so he reads a book.



سعب ولد تصحه جيده بحب مروضه. بلعب النفس وكرة القدم وكرة السلة. ياكل طعاما صحيا مش عدا في علم أن هذا الطعام ليس صحيا جدا. في مساء ، يريد الاسترحاء ، لدلك يقرأ كتابا.

"I do a lot of exercise because it's good for me," says Seleem. "Your heart is very important so you have to keep it healthy." Seleem is right. It's important to do exercise.

سول سنيم اقوم بالكثير من النسارين لامها جيدة بالنسبة لي". "قلبك مهم جدا لذا عليك أن تحافظ عليه بصحة جيدة."سليم على حق. فمن المهم ممارسة التدريبات الرياضية.

He has a healthy family, too. His sister Amira plays tennis and his sister Dina plays football. His mom walks to work and his dad rides his bike, but they don't play sports. His sisters like to listen to music to relax. It's important for our hearts to relax, too.

سيد عائلة ستنع تصحه تعدا احمد اميرة تلعب التنس وشقيقته ديما تلعب كرة القدم. تمشي والدته إلى لعدال ودركات والدد د حمد الكنهم لا تمارسون الرياضة. تحب أخواته الاستماع إلى الموسيقي للاسترخاء من المهم أن تسترخي قلوبنا أيضا

# Linking words

Linking words are words that join words or sentences together.

#### and

To link different things in a list

- Fish, chicken, and beans are all healthy food.
  - To link two similar sentences
- We went to the beach and we swam in the sea.

### but

To show a contrast

- He is weak, but works for 8 hours a day.
  - To link a positive and a negative sentence
- He is rich, but he doesn't help the poor.

### because

To show a reason for something

Nadine goes to the pool because she likes swimming.

SO

To show the result of something

- Lara wants to keep her heart healthy, so she does exercise.
- 42 Unit (1) Life in my world

لبيال ا

# **General Activities**

Alı

# Read and complete the dialog will the words in the so-

Hello, Seleem. Where are you going?

volleyball - and - sports center - Fridays - but

Se	leem	I'm going	to the	because it's b	asketball club today.
Alı		Is there a	2,	club a	at the sports center?
Se	leem :	Yes. It's o	on 3)		
Ali	:	Is there a	tennis club?		
Se	eleem	No, there	isn't. I play voll	eyball :	football.
2	Choo	se the cor	rect answes fro	ma ib it i old	
ī	Nadine o	oes to the	pool		she likes swimming.
	a) beca	use		c) but the morning,	d) and she goes
	to bed ea	arly.	b) and	c) because	
	Last wee	kend we v	vent to the bead		we swam in the sea.
	a) and		b) so	c) but	d) because
1	Hany like	es to play t	oasketball,	he does	n't like to play football.
	a) so		b) because	c) and	d) but
ц,	Fish, chi	cken,		bean	s are all healthy food.
	a) and		b) but	c) because	d) <b>s</b> 0
6	Wael like	s fish,			he doesn't like lamb.
	a) beca	wse	b) so	c) but	d) and
1	-		omegranates,		figs.
	a) so		b) because	c) and	d) but
8		the library	/	*	I needed a book.
	a) but		b) and	because	J) <b>so</b>
					s me can Flori Town 42

9. Lara wants to keep her heart healt				thy, she does exercise			
	a) because	<b>b</b> }	\$0	c)	and	d)	but
10.	Walid and Shady	wer	t to the park		•	. they	played tennis.
	a) so		but	c)	because	d)	and
11.	I'm going to the s			ĺ	it's i	baskett	oall club today.
	a) because	_		c)	SO	d)	but
12.	I don't play baske					1	play volleyball
	a) and		but	c)	because	d)	so
13.	Lara plays tennis						s to be healthy
	a) but	b)	SO	c)	and	d)	because
3	Read and com	plet	e with the c	orre	ect form.		
1.	Tarek plays footba	İl		(	and he do	esn't p	lay basketball.
2. \	Ne eat a lot of frui	t				('5(	it is healthy.
3. 1	Naglaa goes to the	e sp	orts center	fund she doesn't go to the gym.			
4. \	We eat fish			(iii) we eat fresh vegetables, too			getables, too.
5. I	want to be healthy	1		٠,	uso) I don't	eat car	ndy and cakes.
4	Write a text of		( ) wo	rds	about:		
			How to kee	phe	ealthy		
Gui	ding elements:				* *		
	( healthy - spo	orts	- exercise -	frui	t - vegetab	les - to	ennis )

44 Unit (1) Life in my world

Help your child deal with such questions. مامد بنقلك أن يتمامل مع مثل هذه الأستاة.

# \_c=traein (7)

# STORY: WAITING FOR THE RAIN

#### Vocabulary

rain مطر cub sunshine مطر lovely warm hard المعادة dead happily

# Important expressions and prepositions

hot day
lay in
move to
run away

rain falling
جم حار (يتدند ق)
start to
wake up
معرك احلال / عمرا بعبد (حلال / عمرا )

# Modal verbs

التنبو For prediction will We will be hungry. For request and permission can Can we catch a rabbit to eat? For possibilities might Some rabbits might be dead. For impossibility and disability · Lite can't Without rain, the grass cant grow. For obligation الإلزام must We must wait for rain.

# Tisten to and read the story

#### في انتظار المطر Waiting for the rain

It was another long, hot day in the grassland. Cub was with his mother, and he lay in the sunshine. But his mother looked womed.



كان يوم اخر طويلا وحارا في الاراضي العشدية كان السمل مع المه ، وكان يرفد في صوء الشمس بكن والدته بدت قلقة.

"I hope it rains soon," she said. "Why do you want it to rain?" asked Cub. "It's lovely and warm. Wecan play in the sunshine." "If it doesn't rain, the grass won't grow. Then we will be hungry," she answered. Cub started to laugh. "What do you mean? We eat meat, not grass!"

فالت؛ أمل أن تمطر قربها". سأل الشبل لماذا بويدين أن تمطر؟". "إنه يوم جسبل ود ق. بمكمنا اللعب بحب سعة لشمس. أجابت الأم"إذا لم تمطر، قلن بتمو العشب. ثم ستكورُ حاتعين " بد "لشبن يضحك. "ماد بفصدي؟ نحن نأكل اللحم وليس العشب!"

He ran away to play with his brothers and sisters, but his mother looked at the sky and worried. Two weeks later, it was still hot, and the ground was hard. There was no rain, and the plants were brown. Now, Cub had a strange feeling in his stomach: hunger. Can we catch a rabbit to eat?" he asked his mother. "Ican't find any rabbits," she said sadly.

جرى الشيل بعيد النعب مع إحوثه و حواته، لكن و لدته تطرب إلى السيب وقلقت. بعد أسبوعين ، كان الجو لا يزال عارا، وكانب الارص صلبه لم يكن هناك مصور وكانب العامات سبة الآن، كان ندى الشين شعور عريب في معدده اله الجوع، سأل والدنه "هل بمكننا اصطماد رنب لتناول الطعام؟" قالت بحزن" لا يمكنني العثور على ان أرانب".

"Some rabbits have gone to other places. Some rabbitsmight be dead." "Why?" asked Cub. "Because there isn't any rain. Without rain, the grasscant grow. If the grass doesn't grow, the rabbits don't have any food." "Then we don't have any food!" answered Cub. Now he understood.

"ذهبت بعض الارائب إلى أماكن احرى. قد مكون معض الاراسب مينة،" سنال الشبل"لماذا؟". "لأنه لا يوجد أي مطور دلون السف لا يمكل للعشب أن يحمو. ﴿ لم ينهو العشب، فلن يكون للأرانب في طعام، أجاب الشيل"إذا

#### Lesson (7)

"What can we do?" "We wast for rain. If it doesn't rain, we must move to a different place." "So let's go! We caret stay here without food!" said Cub, who was very worried now.

"منذا يمكننا أن نفعل؟", "بحب أن ننبطر المصر. إذا لم مطر ، يحب أن ننتقل إلى مكان محتيف." قال الشيل الذي كان فلقا للغاية الآن."لذلك هيا ترحل! لا يمكننا البقاء هنا بدون طعام!".

His mother smelled the air. She saw a thin gray cloud start to move through the blue sky. "Let's wait one more day," she said. Cub went to bed hungry, but in the morning, he woke up to hear rain falling on the ground.

كست وسدته نشم رنحه الهواء. رأت سحالة رمادية رفيقة لبد في التحرك عبر السماء الزرقاء. قالت ' دعوه السطر لوم 'حر دهب الشبل إلى 'لفراش حانعا ، ولكن في الصناح ، استبقظ لسماع المطر يسفط على الأرض.

He ran outside with his brothers and sisters, and they played in the cool water. Mother lion smiled. "Do you like the rain now, Cub?" she asked. "Yes, I do! Now the grass will grow, the rabbits will come back, and we won't be hungry anymore!" said Cub, happily.

كت في لحارج مع حومه وحواته، وبعنوا في الماء البارد ابتسمت الام وقالب "هيل تحب المطر الان, أيها الشيل؟" قال الشيل بسعادة. "نعم! الآن العشب سوف ينمو، والأرانب ستعود، لن نجوع بعد الآن!



Help your child listen to and read the story. منعد طلقت أن يستمع وبقوا القصة.

ALBAHER - Connect Plus (5) - First Term - 47

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1.	It was another long	9		day in the grassland
	a) cool		c) hot	d) sunny
2.	OF FROM BUILDING TRANSPORT OF F	2524 HILLIONSIE BIROSTONISSENDER		was with his mothe
	a) Lion	b) Cub	c) Cap	d) Cup
3.	Cub lay in the	01001106M1=C)4=46m #8514844F+10110	nene ne ne gansemishmidemitéhket	q+4xxxxxx44)
	a) road	b) street	c) house	d) sunshine
4.	The mother lion le	ooked	***************************************	*** 0 = 0 1 = 0 0 = 0
	a) worried	b) happy	c) sad	d) funny
2	Choose the co	rrect answer fr	om a, b, c, or o	i
1.	If it doesn't rain,	the grass won't		Po <sub>t</sub>
	a) grow	b) sleep	c) eat	d) run
2.	It's hot and there	isn't any		
	a) desert	b) air	c) rain	d) flowers
3.	He is		. He v	vants something to ea
	a) thirsty	b) hungry	c) hot	d) cold
4.	She heard the ra	ain		demo antibiphomosopped ag
	a) swimming	b) running	c) turning	d) falling
5.	There isn't any o	grass to eat, so t	he rabbits	be hungr
	a) will	b) can	c) can't	d) might
6.	When it doesn't	rain, the grass		gro\
	a) might	b) won't	c) can	d) wouldn't
7.	There are cloud	s in the sky. It		rain soo
	a) must	b) should	c) will	d) shouldn't
8.	Cub		sle	ep because he's hung
	a) can	b) will	c) can't	-
9.	Taverous (910) (over of an image) dimited (1			we catch a rabbit to e
	a) Are	b) Can		d) Has
		•	,	-/ / / / /

#### Lesson (7)

### Read the following text and answer the questions.

It was another long, hot day in the grassland. Cub was with his mother, and he lay in the sunshine. But his mother looked worried because there wasn't rain. She hoped it would rain soon. If it doesn't rain, the grass won't grow. Then they will be hungry. If the grass doesn't grow, the rabbits don't have any food. But it rained and Cub was happy again.

A)	Choose	the	correct	answer	from	a,	b,	C	Or	d
----	--------	-----	---------	--------	------	----	----	---	----	---

1	. It	was	hot	in	the
---	------	-----	-----	----	-----

- a) grassland
- b) club c) hotel
- d) tent
- . lion hoped it would rain soon
  - a) Father
- b) Sister c) Brother
- d) Mother

- 3. The underlined word "he" refers to
  - a) mother
- b) cub
- c) rabbit d) sky

#### B) Answer the following questions.

- 4. How did Mother feel at the start of the story?
- 5. What will happen if it doesn't rain?

#### Order the words to make correct sentences.

#### 5 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Grassland ecosystem

#### **Guiding elements:**

Ŋ.

11/

af

( hot - live - animals - rain - grass - food )

# **Writing Corner**

### Ecosystem

An ecosystem is all the animals and plants in an area. The ecosystem can be as small as a pond or as big as a forest.

In an ecosystem, living things such as plants and animals interact with non-living things such as water, rocks, and soil. The different species in an ecosystem make a community, and they all need each other to survive.

## A healthy heart

Your heart beats over 100,000 times a day! So it's important to keep your heart healthy. When you walk, run, swim, or cycle, you make your heart work harder. If you exercise regularly, your heart works better and you can get the minerals, nutrients, and oxygen you need more easily.

# How to stay healthy

Health is very important. I love sports. I play tennis, football, and basketball. I eat healthy food like fruit, vegetables, and rice. I don't eat a lot of chocolate because I know it isn't very healthy. In the evening, I want to retax, so I read a book.

# Review on Unit (1)

#### Ecosystems

grassland	الماعي / ارض مسلمه	animals	حيوادات
rainforest	الدالة مطيرة	species	Jan 196
freshwater		soil	ربه زراعية
living things	كائنات حبة	thick	سميك
non-living things	كائنات غير حبة	canopy	بظلة
Amazon rainforest	غامات الأمازون المطبرة	community	يعتمي

#### Animals

dugong	حيوان الأطوم	ده
kingfisher	طائر الرفراف	س
lizard	سح	نحل بان / بطن
The land of		

#### The heart

arteries	S . 00//000	
veins	oxygen beat	
carbon dioxide	beat blood	
Other	DIOOG	

#### **Others**

saltwater		
mangrove tree	7.	wadi
custard apple tree	the state of the state of	illnesses
medicinal plant	شجره نفاح الكاسيرد	diseases
Survive	بيات طبي	interact
	يتحدوا اليقي للاي فيلد الحياد	pollen
A 4.		

survive		بيات طبي	interact
	A 11	يبحوا البقى عنى فيد العياد	pollen
beautiful	Adjective		Abstract Noun
Patient		beauty جسيل	
lucky		patienc	ce
successful		luck محطوط	
Help your child i	Wylse unit on	Succes المالية	ss

## Relative Clauses

who

لدي إديني المعاص

forpeople

e.g. We met a man works in a garden.

tehich الذي / التي إلعير تعالى for things

e.g. A wadi is an ecosystem a chi is normally dry.

where المكان

forplaces

e.g. We learned a lot about the area The they live.

# Linking Words

### and

We went to the beach and we swam in the sea.

### but

Nany likes basketball, but he doesn't like football.

## because

Nadine goes to the pool because she loves to swim.

#### SO

Lara wants to keep her heart healthy, so she does exercise.

# Dictation on Unit (1)

Lesson (1)	
	•
· where	-
جد <del>دست</del> ب	
حمله ا	a live
Lesson (3)	
۰۰۰	معرض .
و المصيرة المص	مصور فوتوغرفي
سعبو	the second
Lesson (4)	
٠٠٠ ٠٠٠ ٠٠٠ ١٠٠٠ ١٠٠٠ طائر الرفراف	دودة
الأصوم (حيوان ثديي مائي)	حيوب اللقاح
Lesson (5)	
٠ قلب	•3
٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠٠	الجهار الدوري
ئىرىنى ئىرىنى ئىرىنى ئاوردۇ	نابي أكسيد الدربون
Lesson (7)	
and the second s	أشمة الشمس
<b>,</b>	صلت / قاس
٠٠	السيالة 5
٠ ٠٠٠٠ حوع	شبل
ه ۱۰ سال	دافئ ۱۰

# **Activities On Unit (1)**

<sub>ل الاس</sub>تماع في نهاية الكتاب

# 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

	Your heart  a) beats	b) moves		over 100,00	00 times a day
	When you w  a) blood	t to keep your heart b) healthy valk, run, swim or cyc b) heart	le, y	unhealthy ou make your brain	close work harde
2	If you a) sleep Read and	b) exercise complete the text w	o) ith	regularly, your hear play video games the words in the bu	rt works bette

es - plodoj - dxygen - carbon dloxloe - wate

In some ways, humans are similar to plants. Think about our circulatory system. Instead of water, our veins and arteries carry 1 around our bodies. 2 move blood away from our heart. Veins carry blood to it. The nutrients and 3 need are in our blood. But we don't use that we like plants do.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Hundreds of different kinds of fish, birds, insects, and other animals live in the mangrove forests. We could see many little fish swimming in the shallow water among the roots of the trees, where bigger fish and other animals couldn't catch them. That is how mangrove trees help young fish survive. The leaves of the mangrove trees take four times more carbon dioxide from the air than other kinds of trees. Mangrove trees help us with global warming. We also saw small yellow flowers on the mangrove trees. There are a lot of bees and other insects on them. Bees make a special

#### Activities on Unit (1)

# A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1. The mangrove trees help young fish
  - a) die
- b) destroy
- c) survive
- d) damage

- 2. The main idea of the text is the
  - a) oxygen
- b) fish
- c) mangrove trees as butterflies

- 3. Bees are a kind of
  - a) birds
- b) fish
- c) insects
- d) mammals

- b) Answer the following questions.
- 4. What kinds of living things live in the mangrove forests?
- 5. What do bees make from mangrove flowers?

### 4) The Reader

### Read and write T (True) or F (False).

- 1. Jubari was born in Wadi el Gemal.
- 2. Jubari wasn't very brave.
- 3. Jubari is a dorcas gazelle.
- 4. Donga is Jubari's mother.

### **B** Complete the following sentences.

1. Subira showed Jubari where to rest on

days.

2. Jubari and Subira's favorite food was desert

# 5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I want to be healthy I don't eat chocolate. b) so

a) because

c) but

d) or

2. This is the boy

a) who

b) which c) when

. has a cough. d) where

3. This is a place

a) what

b) who

c) where

.. it sometimes snows. d) when

4. A wadi is an ecosystem a) who

b) which

c) when

is normally dry. d) where

5. Hany likes basketball

a) or

b) and

c) so

he doesn't like tennis. d) but

6. She goes to the pool.

a) but b) because

c) and

she likes swimming, d) so

# Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. lives - What - in - forests - mangrove - ?

2. likes - but - Wael - doesn't like - fish, - lamb - he -

3. fruit - Seleem - food - eats - healthy - like - .

# 7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

**Ecosystems** 

### **Guiding elements:**

( kinds - living - non-living - each other - interact )

# Unit Look around you il cenote, a cave in Mexico In this unit, the students will ... · learn words connected to geography, geology, and extreme weather read and understand two articles about places in Africa · review the past simple and learn to use the present perfect · listen and understand people talking about important geograph cal features · understand a story about a storm-chaser. · find out about volcanoes on the island of Java. \* Write a description of an unusual geological formation and learn how to introduce a topic understand a story about a balloon ride

# Key vocabulary

erode

crater بنت ريزين ابنحب

erupt فوحد الركانا

wetlands

wonders

canyon

dunes

continent کتبان رسیة

्रेड Valley

LIC!

# Natural Wonders

Ngorongoro Crater

Mount Kilimanjaro

Victoria Falls

the Sahara Desert

به برگان نجورو بجورة

باكليمنجازو

الان ويكتوري

يعزاءالكارى

## Extra vocabulary

ecosystem
eopard

lake النظم بين grasslands فهد

buffalos

افي عشبية / مراعي

نغم - هادل

rainforest

snow

cubic

volcano

volcanic

enormous غابة مطيرة

coast جنبہ

farther مكتب

🧽 shape

الان dry ،

Arctic القطب الجبوي

JI.

لغطر الرضيالي

Antarctic

Halo water child identify these words.

#### Lesson (1)

#### Conjugation of verbs

il quir

form	يشكل - يكون	formed	form
include	التصمن - يسالس	included	include
climb	بتسق	climbed	climbe
cover	يغطى	covered	covered
destroy	يدمو	destroyed	destroye

#### **Definitions**

canyon a deep narrow place where a river runs between tall rocks

crater the large round hole in the middle of a volcano

a hill made of sand shaped by the wind

erode changed or destroyed by rain, wind, the sea etc.

erupt send out smoke and fire (from a volcano)

valley a low area of land between two mountains

wetland an area of land that is often covered by water

# - Did you know?

There are thousands of cenotes in Mexico. People go swimming and diving in their cool, clear water.

# Important expressions and prepositions

square kilometer over 600 meters tall on the borders tropical rainforests a deep narrow place shaped by the wind

fall into متر مربع
- a low area <sub>ا</sub> يزيد طوله عن ۲۰۰ متر
at the top ؛ على الحدود
made of , خابات استوانية مطير:
covered by مکان صیق عمیق
cubic meter شکل نوسته د بخ

عج المحدد ق
منطقه متحقولة
على القمة
ستدون من
امعیلی د
مار مکعب

# — How + adj. dan

How big...?

?.... How long - کم حجم ..... ؟

كم المدة .... ؟

How wide ...? - How tall...?

کم طول .... ؟

How high ...?

كم ارتفاع ..... ؟

1-How big is the Ngorongoro Crater?

2- How wide are the Victoria Falls?

3 How high are the Victoria Falls?

4- How tall is Mount Kilimanjaro?

5. How bg is the Sahara Desert?

260 square kilometers.

1,708 meters wide.

108 meters high.

5,895 meters tall.

About the size of the USA.

6-How long have people lived in the Sahara Desert?

Thousands of years.

# Did you know?

There are more than 20 deserts around the world.

Asia has the most desert of the continents.

## Look and read.

# NATURAL WONDERS OF AFRICA

عجائب افريقيا الطبيعية

The African continent is an amazing place, with mountains, deserts, lakes, valleys, and rainforests. There are beautiful coasts, waterfalls, and volcanoes. It has some of the most famous new and refere in the world. Let's read about four of these.

المركان بالمصري واصحري والتحيرات والوديان والغابات المطيرة. هناك سواحل جميلة كبر . به بعض من عجيب تطبيعة الأكثر شهرة في العالم. دعونا نقرا عن أربعة من هذه.

### 1) Ngorongoro Crater:

The Ngorongoro Crater in Tanzania is the largest volcanic crater in the world. It formed when a volcano erupted millions of years ago. It is



about 260 square kilometers. The sides of the crater are over 600 meters tall, and inside there are wetlands and forests. You can see lots of different animals, birds, and plants there. Many big animals live there, including lions, elephants, buffaloes, and leopards.

وهم تحود وتجورو في تبرانيا هي كبر فوهة بركانية في العالم، تشكلت عندما ثار بركان مند ملايين السنين، - بع مساحتها حوال 260 تيبومبرا مربعا. يبلغ طول جواتب الحفرة أكثر من 600 متر ، وفي الداخل توجد صى صنه وغانات. بمكنك رؤية الكثير من الحيونات والطيور والنباتات المختلفة هناك. تعيش هناك عديد من الحيوانات الكبيرة ، بما في ذلك الأسود والفيلة والجاموس والفهود. بلالات فيكتورد

#### 2) Victoria Falls:

This enormous waterfall is on the Zambezi River, on the border between Zambia and Zimbabwe. It's 1,708 meters wide and 108 meters high.

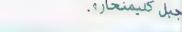


Every minute, over 5 million cubic meters of water falls into a big canyon which the water has eroded. When the water falls, it makes a lot of noise! الهائل يقع على نهر راميم ي ، ١٠ الحدود بس المسالة المنابوي, باللغ عوص الشلال 1/08 مار وارتفاعه 108 متر. في كل دقيقة ، يسقط أكثر من 5 ملايين متر مكعب من المياه في واد كسر أوالتي وبياء المياه. عندما يسقط الماه ، قائله بحدث الكثير من الضوضاء!

#### 3) Mount Kilimanjaro:

Mount Kilimanjaro is made of three volcanoes. Scientists think that it hasn't erupted for 360,000 years.

Mount Kilimanjaro is the tallest mountain in Africa, at 5,895 meters.





Every year, about 25,000 people climb it, but it is difficult. The mountain is very big and has lots of different ecosystems. It starts in the hot grassland. Farther up, there are tropical rainforests, and at the top there is snow and ice.

پتكون جبل كلبمنح رو من تلاته براكبن. بعثقد علمه اده ام ثمر مبد 660 شد سد حس كتبسح به شب الأطول في فويفيه و دارنماع 5895 مار كل عدم و سسمعه حولي 35 شد شخص دن لامر صعب الحدل كبير جدا وبه الكثير من البطم البيلية المحتلفاء بلدا في لاراسي العناسات حاد وصعاد ال عساء وحدا فابات مطيرة استوائية و في الأعلى يوجد ثلج وجليد

#### 4) The Sahara Desert:

The Sahara Desert is the largest hot desert in the world (the Arctic and the Antarctic are bigger but



kilometers - that's about the size of the USA! Some of the sand tenescan be about 180 meters high. Although it is a very dry place, some plants and animals live here, and people have lived here for thousands of years, too.

# General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

# Listen and choose the correct answer from 1. The Victoria Falls are on the

River.

- a) Zambezi
- D) Nile
- c) Amazon
- d) Mississippi meters wide.

- 2. Victoria Falls are
  - a) 1,608
- b) 1.708
- c) 1.808
- d) 1.908

- Victoria Falls are 108 meters
  - a) deep
- b) wide
- c) high
- d) long

- 4. When the water falls, it makes a lot of
  - a) sound
- b) voice
- c) view
- d) noise



### Read and complete the text with the words from the bos.

#### countries - dry - largest - dunes - cities

The Sahara Desert is the 1) hot desert in the world and is nine million square kilometers It covers eleven 2: - that's about the size of the USA! Some of the sand 3) be about 180 meters high. Although it is a very 4) place some plants and animals live here, and people have lived here for thousands of years, too.



#### Read the following fort then answer the questions.

Mount Kilimanjaro is made of three volcanoes. Scientists think that it hasn't erupted for 360,000 years. Mount Kilimanjaro is the tallest mountain in Africa, at 5,895 meters. Every year, about 25,000 people climb it, but it is difficult. The mountain is very big and has lots of different ecosystems. It starts in the hot grassland. Farther up, there are tropical rainforests, and at the top there is snow and ice.

- \* Choose the correct answer from . , . or .
- 1. Mount Kilimanjaro is made of three
  - a) floods
- b) volcanoes -) earthquakes d) craters

Guiding elements:

( amazing - coasts - natural - wonders )

# Lesson (2)

### LANGUAGE

### Key vocabulary

papyrus المصريون القدماء ancient Egyptians climate change تعبر ساخ sail on a boat geographical facts travel by plane حصن حعرافيه

#### Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs walnut Jisa

#### Present

visited بزور visited visit affected يؤثرعلي affect affected traveled يسافران traveled travel lasted يدوم / يستمر lasted last

#### Irregular verbs

Present		Pa	
get	يحصل على	got	got
tell	يخبر	told	told
meet	يقابل	met	met
make	يصنع	made	made
see	ېرى	saw	seen
eat	يأكل	ate	eaten
do / does	يفعل	diđ	done
be	بكون	was / were	been

### Past Simple Tense

زمن الماضي البسيط

Form The second form of the verb

♦ يتكون من التصريف الثاني للفعل (بإضافة d, ed, led للفعل المنتظم)

♦ الأفعال غمر المنتظمة تحفظ.

Regular

verb + (d / ed / ied)

Irregular:

the verb changes

e.g. I traveled to Luxor last week.

e.g. We are fish yesterday.

Usage

To talk about an action that started and finished in the past

e.g. I went to the park last month.

Negative

..... (مصدر الفعل) + didn't + inf (مصدر الفعل) + .....

e.g. I didn't visit the desert last Friday.

Question.

Yes No question

? (مصدر الفعل) + inf. (الفاعل) ?

e.g. Did you do your homework? - Yes, I aid. - No, I did. i.

Wh-question

Q.W + did + subject (الفاعل) + inf. {مصدر الفعل) ?

© 9 When gid you travel to Aswan? - I traveled there a year ago.

Keywords

yesterday

last

1 ... ago

in the past في عام (٢٠١٠)

والعاطبي

#### Lesson (2)

### Choos, the correct answer from a b, c : a

to the zoo yesterday. 1.

a) go

b) went

c) will go

d) goes

When did you

() playing

d) played

Aswan two weeks ago.

tennis?

a) play We

a) visit

a) do

b) visited

b) plays

;) have visited d) visits

Why

3.

b) does

a) did

d) will

you go to the market last week?

We

swim in the sea yesterday.

a) didn't

aren't

haven't

d) don't

2 From the words to make it.

made - tea - of - I - a cup - .

did - eat - What - yesterday - you - ?

on - Did - yesterday - a ship - travel - you - ?

did - an hour - ago - homework - We - our - .

didn't - ful - medames - eat - They .

#### 3 To all med feating in a the time of the first of the

1. 1

(travel) to Alexandria last year

2. We

(i) shopping two weeks ago.

3. She

(meets) her friends last Friday.

4. Sherif

(studies English yesterday

He never

(travels) by plane in the past.

### Present Perfect Tense.

زمن المضارع التام

Form

I / We / You / They / plural noun + have + P.P

He / She / It / singular noun + has

e.g. Thave eaten fish.

e.g. She has seen her friends.

've - have
's = has

### **Usage**

- To talk about actions that started in the past and continue to the present.
  - e.g., I've lived in Cairo for 20 years.
- To talk about an experience.

التحدث عن حيرة (تحرية حياتية): `

e.g. She has met the king.

Negative

I / We / You / They / plural noun + haven =

naven :

He / She / It / singular noun

+ hasn't

- e.g. We haven't studied French.
- e.g. Ali hasn't seen the new teacher.

Question Yes / No question

Have + (I / we / you / they / plural noun)
Has + (he / she / it / singular noun) + P.P .....?

/ Have you bought a car?

- Yes, I have.

- No, I haven't.

```
Lesson (2) -
  Has she traveled to France?
         - Yes, she has.
                                   - No, she hasn't.
Wh-question
          have + (I / we / you / they / plural noun)
                                                              + PP ...?
   Q.W +
           has + (he / she / it / singular noun)
 · Withe have you been?
                                      I've been to Luxor.
  heywords '
  just
                تها
e.g. I've just bought a pen.
                     بالقعل
 Sheauv -
He's Lag cooked a meal.

    I have cooked a meal a relative.

              بعدرحتى الان
  vet
                'فق السؤال و النفق
e.g. Have you done your homework yet?
e.g. No, I haven't done my homework yet.
  ever .
                    من قبل سبق
                       في السؤال؛
 e.g. Have you ever seen an elephant?
  never
                "تعطي معنى النفي"
 e.g. No, I've never seen an elephant.
  since
                  يأتي بعدها بداية الحدث
 e.g. I've studied English since 2017.
   for
                                   e.g. I've studied English for 7 years.
                أيأتى بعدها مدة الحدث
```

		Lucy Augus	a b a grad			
1	Choose the correct					
1.	Waleed	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	by b	us, taxi, and train		
	a) has traveled	b) travel	traveling :	a) have traveled		
2.	My uncle		us abou	ut his trip to Cairo		
	a) has told	b) tell	c) have told	d) telling		
3.	Grandma		ful meda	mes for breakfas		
	a) have made					
4.	We	arecorde the Georgian A gas	eee ko war ea war ed	on a boal		
	a) has never sailed					
	c) have never sailed	t	d) never sailing			
5.	Aya has never			a famous person		
	a) meet	b) will meet	c) meets	d) met		
(2	Order the words	to make corre	et sentences.			
1.	1. ever - Luxor - to - you - Have - traveled - ?					
2.	a traditional She-	market - visited	d - has .			
3.	has - traveled - Asw	an - to - never	Sara	y, 4		
4.	4. they another - Have country - visited - ever - ?					
5.	eaten - He - has - sa	a <mark>ydeya - nev</mark> er				
3	Read and comple	e with the co	rrect form.			
L.	Ihave		(se	e) Omar in the club		
2.	We have	e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e	(ever) tr	avelled to America		
	My grandpa's	* * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * *		(tell) us a nice stork		
3,		(	Have) she bough	nt an ice cream yell		
5.	Have you		(neve	er) sailed on a boat		

# **General Activities**

# 1

# Read and complete the text with the words from the back

travel - visited - holiday - went - have gone

Reem and Ahmed are going to Luxor on 1)	with their
parents this year. They haven't 2)	Luxor before.
They are going to 3)	to Luxor from Cairo.
It isn't the first time they've traveled somewhere. They	4)
to Jordan two years ago.	

### (2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

4	, 4110000		1				
1.	Sherif				fish from th	ne N	lile many times.
	a) eat	b)	has eaten	c)	have eaten	d)	eaten
	We		. ( 4+ 4				Aswan yet.
	a) visited	b)	will yisit	c)	have visited	d)	haven't visited
3.	AAA 3444 153 - ++303387 18 5077						
	a) Is	b)	Was	c)	Have	d)	Has
4.	1				yo	u thi	is story already.
	a) tell	b)	have told	c)	has told	d)	will tell
5.	Have you ever -		. ,				on a ship?
	a) traveled	b)	to travel	c)	travels	d)	traveling
6.				, ,		, .	fish soup?
	a) You have eate	n		b)	Has eaten he	1	
	c) Have you eate	n		d)	You are eatin	g	
7.	A) Have you visite	ed t	he desert?	3) <b>Y</b>	es, I		
	a) am	b)	have	c)	has	d)	can
8.	Has Fares						
	a) ever	b)	never	c)	yet	d)	for
9.	Youssef and Wae						en an elephant.
	a) has never	b)	have never	(c)	are never	d)	never have
10,	Has Mom						nam El-Nassim?
	a) make	b)	makes	c)	made	d)	making

# Lesson (3)

# MAN-MADE WONDERS OF AFRICA

#### Key vocabulary

man-made	من صنع الإنسان	excited	، الحمس
archaeologist	عالم الاثار	incredible	ر صدق - غير معقول
ruins	أطلال - يقايا	temples	عابد
centuries	قرون	cave	کهف
columns	Black	monuments	্র খ

#### Wonders of Africa

Man-made wonders	Country	/	
Paintings in a cave	وسومات على حدران كهف	North Africa	شمال إفريقب
Ruins of Great Zimbabwe	أطلال زيمنابوي العظمي	Zimbabwe	زېمبابوي
The Canopy Walk	ممشي كانوبي بروابدا	Rwanda	روائدا
Kano City Walls	أسوار مدينة كانو بتبحيريا	Nigeria	ليجبريا
Pyramids of Meroë	أهرامات ميرو بالسودان	Sudan	السودان
Pyramids of Giza	أهرامات الجيزة		
the Valley of the Kings	وأدي الملوك	Egypt	Acer
the Sphinx	أبو الهول		

#### **Natural wonders**

Natural wonde	Country		
Red Sea Coral Reef	لسعات لترجابته بالتجر الأجمر	Egypt	الصر
Ocavango Delta	دله اوگافتحو	Botswana	بتسوابا

#### Conjugation of verbs

	Present		Past	P.P
sell		يببع	sold	sold
feel		يشعر	felt	felt
learn		يتعلم	learnt / learned	learnt / learned
show			showed	shown
snow		پورش . ست ت		shown

### \_ Lesson (3)

### Extra Vocabulary

stone عرب غير صاوف unusual حجر ground عرب غير صاوف stone zebra حمار وحشى

# Important expressions and prepositions

Nyungwe National Park
Thousands of years ago
There's a lot more to see
The Afrikaans Language Monument
from all over the world

# - Did you know?

There are 54 countries in Africa today. People think there are 1,500 - 2,000 different languages! The main language is Arabic, and there are many other important ones such as Swahili and Yoruba, as well as English, French and Portuguese

#### Look and read.

# Mun-made Wonders of Africa

### عجائب أفريقية من صنع الإنسان

The natural world in Africa is beautiful, but people in this continent have made many incredible things, too. Some of the most important man made wonders are in Egypt: the Pyramids of Giza, the Sphinx, the temples of Abu Simbel, and the Valley of the Kings. People come from all over the world to visit these places and learn about Egypt's history. But there's a lot more to see in Africa.

 In North Africa, there are paintings on
Icase are neaves which people made thousands
tot years ago. They often show animals and
people we have ago to think that the Sahara
wash taken on the past because some of the



Participes of an mals such as crocodiles that live in water.

في المدن مراعد الموجاة و 10 من المسخوراة في خيارات الي تستقيد السام السامي وعدمه ما تُضهو الحيوانات والثاني، علماء الأثار تعلقادون أن الصحراء لم تكن حافه في السافي لان تعلق الله 1 ما تطهو مرادية فلس المستمراني عليس في ساء

ve an important city which was built
the 111 and 15th centuries.

فى زيمبابوي ، هذك انفاض زيمبابوي العظمى، وهى عديمه مهمة تم بناؤها بين القرنين الـ 11 والـ 15.



arge stone walls, and people here sold lots of things to different und the world. A newer monument is in South Africa. The anguage Monument is made of stone common and opened in the anstanguage developed when people from other countries are Africa. The language has words from lots of different countries, and show used in South Africa and Namibia.

كان لها جدران حجولة كبيره حداء وناع النّاس هذا الكثير من لاشياء إلى بلدن محتنفه حول العالم كماليد المحدرات حديد وربسا وهو بصدر اللغة الردريدات المصلوع من المداه حجرات الله علم 1975 الدارات وكادرة عادما حال سحاط من دول حرى في فريضا الله الدارة وكادرة عادما حال سحاط من دول حرى في فريضا الله عالم 1976 من الله في في في في الله الأن في جنوب أفريقيا والعبليا.

rainforcest adventure on The Canopy Walk in Nyungure National Park. The bridge was built in 2010 it 160 meters long and 74 meters above the gird. d. It is in the highest part of the trees, solvisions can see monkeys and birds.



الوار رواندا بمكن أن يقومو سيفاسرة مذهدة في الغايات المطابرة ودلك على مسار الأدول ف حديقة بيوستوى الوص . أنم بناء الحسير في 2010، ودسخ طولة 160 متر وارتفاعه 74 متر يون الأرض إله في اعلى جرء من الأدب المسار في المال جرء من

بدلك بمكن ليروة روسالفرود والطدو

## General Activities

## 1 Yead and provident

Egypt - history - Kings - man-made - princes

Some of the most important 1	Mountain Black
The Pyramids of Giza, the Sph	nx the temples of Abo
simbel and the Valley of the	People upma from a
over the world to visit these places and earn ab	out Egypts -

2. Read the following text these in the second

In Zimbabwe, there are the ruins of Great Zimbabwe, an important city which was built between the 11th and 15th centuries and very large stone walls, and people here sold lots of things to different countries around the world.

A newer monument is in South Africa The Afrikaans Language Monument is made of stone columns and opened in 1975. The Atrikaans language developed when people from other countries came to Africa. The language has words from lots of different countries, and is now used in South Africa and Namibia.

A)	Choose	the co	orrect	SHAME!	.101	,	1-1

- Great Zimbabwe city was built between the 11' and 15
  - o: centuries months a: decades
- ? The Afrikaans Language Monument is in
  - N geria South Atrica a; Egypt
- The Afrikaans Language is now used in countries.
  - a) two b) three c) four the five

### B) Answer the following questions

- 4 What does the underlined pronoun it refer to?
  - Where is the Afrikaans Language used now?

veais

#### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. Africa is a a) lake c) city b) country d) continent Some of the most important man-made are in Egypt. a) wonders b) wanders c) mountains d) rivers 3. think that the Sahara wasn't dry in the past. a) Doctors d) Archaeologists b) Teachers c) Farmers In Zimbabwe, there are the of Great Zimbabwe which was an important city. a) rules b) ruins c) roles d) oars The Afrikaans Language Monument is made of stone a) poles b) columns c) circles d) squares Visitors to Rwanda can have an amazing rainforest on the Canopy Walk. a) match b) sport c) adventure d) tree 7. You can enjoy visiting the of Abu Simbel. a) rocks b) caves c) walls d) temples 8. The Red Sea Coral Reef is a .... .. wonder. b) man-made c) normal a) natural d) usual 9. You can see paintings of animals and people inside some in North Africa. b) factories a) houses c) clubs d) caves 10. In which countries do people speak the Afrikaans a) symbol b) style c) Language d) subject 11. What's special about the Canopy in Rwanda? a) Walk b) Run c) Ruin d) Painting Order the words to make correct sentences. Desert - the past - The Sahara - dry - in - wasn't - . see- and - Rwanda - in - Visitors - birds - monkeys - can - . 54 - Africa - in - There - countries - are - .

world - The natural - Africa - is - beautiful - in - .



### STORY: THE STORM-CHASER

### Key vocabulary

storm-chaser photographer extreme weather dust storm hurricane متبع العواصف thunderstorm مصور قموع ه flood طقس شدید snow

### Extra vocabulary

forecast trip frightened loud The USA نشرة حوية - يتنبا event دحلة قصيرة competition خانف during

### Conjugation of verbs

	Present		Past	F.F.
fly	4	يطير- يسافر	flew	flow
drive		بقود	drove	driver
take	*	بأخد	took	taken
win		يعوز	won	MOS
send		برسل	sent	sent
hear		يسمع	heard	heard
keep		يحافظ على	kept	kept
forecast		يتنبا	forecast / ec	forecait /

### Important expressions and prepositions

20 kilometres away	التهاج بعد نسيرين كبلوامه	stay at	3 1
'ake photos	بنتقط صور	close to	عوبت من
teep safe	يجافظ على سلامة	travel to	
inest snow .	النوج كثيفة	or work	- لغمل
global warming	المحتباس الحراان	win a prize 'c'	• .
dangerous situations	مهافي حطيره	drive and a	

### Study the flowing.

The " and a was white and it looked like ice cream!

The was very noisy. The sky was black and it rained all the afternoon.

من الأعصار صاخيا، كانت السماء سوداء وأمطرت طوال فغرة الظهيرة

After the . there was a lot of dust on my parents' new car.

لله العاصفة الترابية كان هناك الكتير من التراب على سيارة و نداي احديدة

The followed the thunderstorm in his car.

تع متعقب العواصف العاصفة الإعدية وهو في سيارته.

Read the story.

The Morning Manes wick wish spec

Kamal's parents often went to other countries for their work. Usually, Kamal and his younger sisters stayed at home with their grandparents. Two years ago: Kamal's parents said. "You can come with us when we next go away for work." Kamal was very excited because his parents were and chases! These are people who travel to places where a remained or another form of storecast. They get very close to the extreme weather event to study it.

الما فعب والدا كمال إلى بلدان اخرى لعبيهم. عادة ، عرب المراد الما كمال إلى بلدان اخرى لعبيهم. عادة ، عرب المراد الما كمال البيمكيات أن تاق معيا المراة القالمة عسد المساسطة والدا كمال البيمكيات أن تاق معيا المراة القالمة عسد المساسطة والدا كمال والديه كانا متعقبين للعواصيا حيزة هم دشعات سين بسافيات مرست المساسطة والديه كانا متعقبين للعواصيا حيزة هم دشعات سين بسافيات مرست المساسطة والديه كانا متعقبين للعواصيا الفاس. بفر والديه كانا متعقبين المائة 
TE Unit 12 Lock Trount you

help your child read the story.

متم طفنك أن يقوأ الفصية.

ولادات المتحدة حيث بمكتهم دراسة الاعاصير، سالهم كسال المسور لنا"، واحدوا المعدا المسور لنا"، واحدوا المعدا المدرد والمدرد والمدرد الكناء له يست إعصاء الكان كما عدد عواصف المدرد في مصر ، لكناء له يست إعصاء الكان

"Are you frightened?" his dad asked Kamal. "No pecal sell me son," said Kamal. When the storm came too near to reaway. Since that trip, Kamal has been to many other places of the has seen heavy snow in the mountains of Sudar Grant of the case of the has learned a lot about the case weather, such as the case of the has taken numbers.

المراجر المرافعة التقط مثاث الصه

Last year, his morn said, "Why don't you send some photo."

?"So Kamal sent the photos you can see be aw in prize for child photographs..., and he also found that he is a convey youngest storm-chasers!

ساد د دوسته هفور ده. الد ساد عبد د ساد ؟ داله أرسل كم! چه ده در الا د عد ساد ۱۵ ساد د سال د كسيد العبا الد داخت ما رضع



## **General Activities**

ر الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1	Listen and ch	oose the correc	t answer from a	, <b>b</b> , c, or <b>d</b> .
1. +	Kamal has been	to many places	with his	
2. 7	i) friends They saw heavy	b) father	c) mother	d) parents in the mountain
3 7	snow	b) ice	c) rain	d) stones
3	ney saw amazi	ing dust storms	in the	
~	forest	b) club	c) desert	d) tent
4. }	Kamal has learr	ned a lot about e	extreme	•
/EN	) weather	b) feather	c) leather	d) climate
(2)	Read and con	nplete the text	with the words f	rom the box.
	hurrican	se / study / storm	n-chasers / extrem	e / make
1)	Kamal was ver	ry excited becau	ise his parents we	re
2)	. 0	r another form	eople who travel to	o places where a
They	get very close	to the extreme	f 3)	veather is forecast
3	Choose the c	Offert answer	from a, b, c, or d.	
1.		and disapple	rom a, b, c, or d.	
	The a) farmer The	b) storm-chase	engineer	nderstorm in his a
3.	a) air The		n ) weather	ooked like ice crea d) fog
	The sky was bla a) snow After the	ack and it rained b) dust	all the afternoon. c) sea	was very noi:
5.	a) drought Kamal	b) flood		d) hurricance of water in the road d) clouds
	a) had	b) took		otos of the hurrical
80	Unit (2) Look around	d you	- Poill	d) drove

, there was lot of dust on our car. 6. After the a) dust storm = 1, flood a) snow h) hurricane the first prize for child photographers. Kamal iii played a) won 5. gained b) earned 8. Have you ever seen an extreme a) weather b) whether c\ wizard d feather Order the words to make correct contances 1. he - 16 5 - taken - of - photos - hundreds - ? 2. on - mountain - deavy - fell - the - snow - . 3. are - thunderstorms - in - interested - 5 4. some photos - - of · hurricane - the - took -Write a text of ( ) words about:

### The storm-chaser

### **Guiding words:**

(photographer - hurricanes - dust storms - thunderstorms - floods)



			ن فق العاب
Pretty Village		mountain smoke	
poem		below	Qi
burn			كالا
material		online	بان ۱۱۸۱۰ نب
Java Island	مادة خام		مان الله الإنترنت / على الإنترنب
Definitions	جزيرة جاوا		<b>3</b> .
10.0110			

erupt	when fire and rocks come out of the top of a volcano the top part of the Earth in which	
अस	the top part of the Earth :-	ور (البركان)
ned .	bot liquid	رية
Stop	soft, wet material the	سركائية
ash	soft, wet material that moves down mountains	الطعين
	something soft and gray that you find when a fire	
100	The element	الاس

# important expressions and prepositions

taround you	Help your child identify these words.	S. Smell de
82 Unit (2) Look around you	come ينظر لاسفل على	
look down	mix	
the helping hand	go سكان الحزيرة	12
the island people	come مکان امن	يامل تم مقعل
- odic hidce	is and prepositions	
121 693101	1S and propositions	

م الله الكلمات. على هذه الكلمات. Help your child identify these words.

### Good things and bud ti

#### Java

### fact file

- Java is an island.
- There are many volcanoes on Java, for example Salak.

When a volcano erupts, ash and fire come out of it and the people in the villages have to go away from their homes.

The soil in Java is very good for growing plants.

I'd like to live on Java because it is a pretty place.



I wouldn't like to live on Java because it has a lot of dangerous volcanoes.





#### They're words with the same set

fire	higher
thirty-nine	online
away	stay
goes	flows
look	book
blood	mud

Help your child learn about Java Island.

# Listen and read the poem. The Volcanoes of Janus

Let me take you to the produisland of Where almost everything is made of lava!

It comes from Java's voicar des,

Which look down on the willages below.

The names of the volcanoes are:
Salak, Guntur, Karaha, Malabar...
But there are another thirty-nine,
You can find their names online!

When they erupt, there's ashand fire,

Stroke fills the air, going higher and higher,

The island people have to go away,

to a safe place where they can stay.

The lava and ash mix with mud flows,
This makes sollwhere good food grows,
When the farmers come back to the land,
They thank the volcanoes for the helping hand.

## General Activities

1	I as and rotag	nick a	the text wi	th th	ne words t	रुक्त ॥	he vox.	
			volcanoes -					
	Let me	take	you to the p	rett	<b>y</b> 1)		of Java.	
	where almo							
	It o	omes	from Java's	<b>s</b> 3)	******** *********	. 9		
	which look	dowr	n on the 4).		m 4 + p 4 h m 6 p 4 + 4 + 4 m m 4 + 4 + 5 h	., belo	W.	
2	y the to the con	nect a	seswer fron	Пα	b, t, or d.			
,	The hot red		quickly	can	ne down the	e side	of the volcano	).
	a) lava	b) s	seed	c)	mud	d)	ash	
?	If the volcanoes		, fire and ro	cks	will come o	out of t	he top of them	١.
	a) make	b) e	erupt	c)	stay	d)	take	
	After three days of	rain, a	heavy o	came	down the s	ide of t	the big mountain	٦.
	. mud bank							
,	In a few months, the	10 S00	ds we plante	d in	the wi	II grow	into small tree:	5.
	a) sail	b) f	loor	c)	soil	d)	land	
5.	When the fire sto	pped	burning, the	еге у	vas lots of		on the ground	đ.
	a) ash							
5	The	pec	ople have to	go	away wher	the v	olcanoes erup	t.
	a) island					a)	lake	
3	pilitin a text o	FIFT	Y (50) wor	ds a	iboux:			
		77	he island	of	Java			
àu	iding words:							
	(pre	tty - la	ava - volcai	noe	s - erupt -	soil)		
		-				-		

## Key vocabulars

arch

hole

Write

ride

forget

take

natural

sandstone

---- unusuat

rainbow فدحة / ثقب

description

shape حبجر رملي

### Conjugation of verbs

Present

wrote بكتب

rode یرنب

-- forgot

took باخذ

Past

written

P.P

يكل

العباة أبار

فالجناب برابان

فيلوره

C 1 132

ridden

forgotten

taken

ITTELL THE THE COUNTY OF THE STATE S

late afternoon

water bottle

white limestone

look orange

in the early morning

geological formations

Nambung National Park

wildlife

a group of

full of

wild flowers

sun hat

tourist brochure

ride a horse

would like to منزه بامبونج ابوص

## Jan The description

# National Monument - Utah, USA

حسر موس مرح سر قوس قرح الوطني- بوتا ، الولايات المتحدة الامريكية

Rainbow Bridge is one of the largest natural arches in the world. It is also 200 million years old. It is on Lake Powell in Utah, USA. It is 88 meters tall and it is made of red and brown sandstone.



م شعبه حسسن أكبر الأقواس الطبيعية في العالم، بل إن عمره أيضًا 200 مليون سنة. هو م شعبه حسسن أكبر الأقواس الطبيعية في العالم، بلغ طوله 88 مترا وهو مكون من الحجر . . ولايات المتحدة الأمريكية. يبلغ طوله 88 مترا وهو مكون من الحجر

A river erodeda hole in the sandstone and has formed the arch over many, many years

Rainbow Bridge has been a feat enal Montre-resince 1910.

If you want to visit it, you have to take a boat, ride a horse, or walk to it.

لتاكل في الحجر الرمبي وشكل قوس على مدى سنوات عديدة, بعبير التاكل في الحجر الرمبي وشكل قوس على مدى سنوات عديدة, بعبير 1910 في التاكنت ترغب في زيارته ، عبيك أن تأخذ فارب، أو تركب

في عنيت زيارته في الربيع أو في الخريف. لا تنس أن تاحذ زجاجه

Halm

### Read the deem plint

## The Pinnacles

الدمم الصف به

The Pinnacles are one of the most unusual geological formations in Western Australia.



فهم الصخيرية هي واحده من أكثار السكوسات بعسولوجية غير العادية في عرب ستراب

They are a group of tall white rocks in the Nambung National Park. The Pinnacles are 25,000 to 30,000 years old. They are made of white limestons which the rain and wind have eroded into different shapes.

لم مجموعة من الصحور البعضاء الطويلة في منتزه دمبونج لوصى، وعموها يتروح من 25 ل الأعماد سنه وكونت من المحجر الجورى الأبيض بفعل الأمطار والرباح إلى أشكال مختلفة.

The tallest columns are between three and five meters high. If you want to visit the Pinnacles, the best time of day to see them is in the early morning or late afternoon.

براح ارتفاع الأعمدة الأطول بين ثلاثة وخمسة امتار. إذا كنت ترغب في زيارة انفهم ، فإن أفضل وقت في اليوم وفيتها هو في الصباح الباكر الله في وقت مناخر بعد انظير.

At these times, the sun makes them look orange against the yellow sand dunes of the desert. The best time of year to see them is between August and October when the desert is full of beautiful wild flowers! You can drive there from the city of Perth in two hours.

إلهذه الزوق مع بعض استسس الأسماء تبدو برتقالية اللون في مقابل الكثبان الرملية الصغواء في الصحواء العلم والمدرد في المدرد في ا



سالله وصف عن نخوبن خيولوجين غريب

- To introduce the topic, start the first sentence with the name of your geological formation.
- Write why this geological formation is important or special in the same sentence.
- Next, include the location and age of the formation.
- Explain how it was formed.
- Describe what it looks like and how big it is.
- Add extra, interesting information about it
- Tell people how they can visit it.

Do some research. Use the internet and complete the table

Name Location Age Size / Shape Made of Froded by When to visit How to get there

Use the information to write a description of - ) words.

# Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

### Lake - eroded - sandstone - arches - Nile

Hainbow Bridge is one of the largest natural 1) in the world lin Utal USA. It is 88 meters tall and it is made of red and brown 2)					
It is also 200 million ye	ears old. It is o	n 2)	The World		
USA It is no material	. 11	ada af . I	Gwell in th		
A river 4)a h	ole in the sand	dstone and has form	med #		
A river 4)a h		1310	med the arch man		
			,		
Choose the cor	rect answer fi	rom a, b, c, or d.			
1. Rainbow	is one of	the largest natural a	archeo :- "		
, a) Pole	b) Pyramid	c) Stone	The World		
2. A river	a hole in th	e sandstone and ha	o) bridge		
a) washed	b) watered	c) eroded	sis filled the arch		
3. You can		a horse to vis	a) Illied		
a) hit	b) drive	c) walk			
<ol> <li>Don't forget to take</li> </ol>	ce your water b	ottle and a	d) ride		
a) star	b) moon	c) sun	d) planet		
<ol><li>Rainbow Bridge i</li></ol>	s a natural geo	logical .	u) planet		
a) nation	b) pollution	c) information	d) formation		
<ol><li>The monument is</li></ol>	made of	4			
a) paper	b) fabric	c) sandstone	d) plastic		
<ol><li>You should visit t</li></ol>	he Rainbow Br	idge in the	season.		
a) October	b) Friday	c) summer	d) weak		
8. The Pinnacles ar	e a group of tal	ll white			
a) trees	b) clothes	c) shops	d) rocks		
THE RESIDENCE OF THE PARTY OF T			-		

## 3 Results following the processions

The Pinnacles are one of the most unusual geological formations in Western Australia. They are a group of tall white rocks in the Nambung National Park. The Pinnacles are 25,000 to 30,000 years old. They are made of white limestone. The tallest columns are between three and five meters high. The best time of day to see them is in the early morning or late afternoon. The best time of year to see them is between August and October when the desert is full of beautiful wild flowers! You can drive there from the city of Perth in two hours.

### A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The Pinnacles are one of the most unusual formations.

   The Pinnacles are one of the most unusual formations.

   The Pinnacles are one of the most unusual formations.
  - a) local b) geological c) historical c) physical
- 2. The Pinnacles are made of white
  - a) sand dunes b) limes ... rocks ... limestone
- 3 You can drive there from the city of Perth in minutes.
  a) 2 b) 60 c) 120 d) 40
- B) Answer the following questions.
- 4. What's the text about?
- 5 What is the best time of day to visit the Pınnacles?

### 4. Order the words worsh's rome a suscence:

- years Rainbow 200 old million is Bridge
- 2 a hole sandstone A river the in eroded .
- 3 is -a very -desert -hot The monument -in -
- 4. to -water Don't -bottle -your -take -forget



# STORY: A BALLOON RIDE

### Key vocabulary

basket ، منطان

ribbon طيار

gentie لطيف flame

يشعل اشعل المعال المعا

### Extra vocabulary

tickets تناكر diary

palm tree

flight رحبة جوبة tiny

enormous مسرور/سعيد

rope تماثين rope

### Conjugation of verbs

#### Regular veries about dissi

	Present	Past	P.P
laugh		ا laughed بسعك	laughed
minis			raugneu

pick picked picked picked

Irregular verbs dobino pur les

Present Past P.P.

dropped يسقط

flew بعثير/بسافر flew flown fall fell fallen found found

shine found found

shone shone شئ / سمح

dropped

حبل

### Lesson (7)

### Definitions

ribbon a long, soft piece of material

gentle slow, not fast or extreme

basket people use it to carry things, and a big one can carry

people

the burning gas that you see in a fire

light / lit make/made something start to burn

### Important expressions and prepositions

hot air balloon

a hat on his head

a perfect weather

have a ride

touch the clouds

special coat

fall out of

climb into

## Listen and read the story.

"Come inside, Mariam," said Mom, "It's late."

Mariam was in the garden. She loved watching the birds. She thought about the places they

visited and the things they saw. "I would love to fly, ' she said. "Like a birdy wisited and the things they saw." Mariam's dad came home. He was happy Mom laughed. "You are funny!" Mariam's dad came home. He was happy "Look! I've got tickets for the Luxor hot die bull population will see balloom in lots of colors."

Unit (2)

النابي: انعاى إلى المدخل با بريم" الوقت مدخن كنت مريم ب حديث كسب عسر بدند. النبير فكرت في الأماكن التي زاروها والأشباء التي رأوها، قالت: "حب نطيرن"، سائنها عها، وهي تصعب الشالطيور؟ الت مضد حكة أرعد والد مربم بي المارل. كال سعد على المد مدي تذكر لمها جدل القصم مناطيد الهوائية إساري المناطيد ذات الألوان الكثيرة.

Mariam was very excited. All week, she thought about the festival. Finally, the day arrived. Mariam was watching everything when she saw a tall man. He had a special coat and a hat on his head. He was a hot air balloon pilot As he walked away, a book fell out of his bag. He didn't know. Mariam ranto pick it up

المن مربع منحمس، إدارات مغراه الدين وع منظر في الدين و مربع من مربع عند المنظريم منحمس، إدارات من من الدين و علم المنظرة المن

"Look, Mom!" she said. "It's a book about hot air balloon lights. ""Oh no! said Mom. "It's his ........! It's about everywhere he's been. ""We must give! back!" said. Mariam. Together they ran until they found the man."

المنافوليم "انتضري يا أمي!". "إذه كتاب عن رحلات منطادهوائي. فالت الأم "أوه ١٦". "نها مذكر نه النها عر المعين ال

### Losson (7)

"It's perfect weather today, with no rain and a gentlewind," he said.

They followed him to the balloon and climbed into the basket. Mariam



watched as he litthe flame As the air inside the balloon got not the drooped, the rope and the balloon slowly climbed into the air.

، جن المعطفس مثالي عدد من مطاه داء الجاهدية المعود أن للمنظاد وضعانو الى السلة. و ساهدته الله السعال عهد المادان حدل لها داء حال الساطاء المائط الحرال والصلق المنظاد ببطاء في

Soon, they were flying over the beautiful city of Luxor. The wind olevathem gently through the clear blue sky. They saw green rields and sandy deserts, palm trees, dunes, and mountains.

م عان ما كانوا تصبرون فوق مدينة الافصر الجميلة. بعنتهم الرياح بلطف خلال السماء الزرقاء الصافية. رأوا تحقق تحصراء والصحاري الأملية واشجار النخال والكثنان والحيال

They flew over enormous statue and beautiful temples. The Nile looked like a silver ribbon. Everything was quiet and the houses cars, and boats were tiny. The sun shone and it felt like they could touch the clouds. "Now I know what it's like to be a bird!" said Mariam.

. در جميلة. بدا الثيل مثل الشريط الفضي. كان كل شيء هادنا ، وكانت المنازل لشدس وشعروا أنه يمكنهم ملامسة الفيوم. فالت مريم "الان أعرف

Help your

A Company of the Company

# Reac and complete the text with the words from the box.

balloon - statues - excited - tickets- exciting								
One day. Mariam's dad came home. He had 1) for the war of the hot air 21.  They climbed into the balloon. Soon they were flying over the beautiful city of Luxor. They flew over enormous 4) and beautiful tempes								
2 Choose the correct answer from ., ., ., or .								
1. A a) flame 2. To	b) basket	c) balloon is to make som	ething start to bu					
a) light 3 The word "	b) fall	" means slow,	not fast or extrem					
a) fast 4. People use	b) gentle	c) quick	d) excited to carry thing					
a) baskets	b) balls	c) ribbons the burning gas t	d) balloons hat you see in a fi					
a) Flag	<ul><li>b) Oxygen</li></ul>	c) Air in who flies a plane	d) Flame or a hot air ballod					
a) pilot	b) farmer	c) teacher	d) baker					
	-watching - love							
2. about - air - "he book - flights - hot - balloon - is								

a ride - Woode - like - have - to - you - ?



### Read the following text then answer the questions.

Mariam loved watching birds. She wanted to see what they see. One day, Mariam's dad came home. He had tickets for the Luxor hot air balloon festival. Mariam was very excited. When the day arrived, Mariam and her family went to the festival. Mariam was with her parents when she saw a tall man. Something fell. It was a diary. Mariam wanted to give it back. "Thank you," said the pilot. "Would you like to have a ride?" Mariam's family were very excited and they climbed into the balloon. Soon, they were flying over the beautiful city of Luxor. They flew over enormous statues and beautiful temples.

### A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Mariam loved watching
  - a) animals b) birds
- c) sports
- d) clouds

- The festival was in
  - a) Aswan
- b) Cairo
- c) Giza
- d) Luxor

- 3. Mariam's family were very
  - a) tired
- b) excited
- c) sick
- d) noisy

- B) Answer the following questions.
- 4. What fell from the tall man?
- 5. What does the underlined pronoun "He" refer to?



## 5 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Guiding words: A trip on a hot air balloon

(Luxor - pilot - gentle - flame - tiny - statues - temples)

# Writing Corner

## Wonders of Africa

The African continent is an amazing place, with mountains, declared lakes, valleys, and rainforests. There are beautiful coasts, waterfalls volcanoes. It has some of the most famous natural wonders in the volcanoes. It has some of the most famous natural wonders in the volcanoes. It has some of the most famous natural wonders in the volcanoes. It has some of the most famous natural wonders in the volcanoes. It has some of the most famous natural wonders in the volcanoes. It has some of the most famous natural wonders in the volcanoes. It has some of the most famous natural wonders in the volcanoes. It has some of the most famous natural wonders in the volcanoes. It has some of the most famous natural wonders in the volcanoes. It has some of the most famous natural wonders in the volcanoes. It has some of the most famous natural wonders in the volcanoes. It has some of the most famous natural wonders in the volcanoes. It has some of the most famous natural wonders in the volcanoes. It has some of the most famous natural wonders in the volcanoes. It has some of the most famous natural wonders in the volcanoes. It has some of the most famous natural wonders in the volcanoes.

## Rainbow Bridge in the USA

### The Sahara Deserve

The Sahara Desert is the largest hot desert in the world. It is eleven countries. Some of the sand dunes can be 180 meters Although it is a hot and dry place, some animals and plants live

## Review on Unit (2)

### Vocabulary

valley 523 crater dunes اُرادِ صبق ۽ منعدر canyon erode التي ريلية مستقطات wetlands (জন্দ % storm-chaser erupt hurricane thunderstorm dust storm المعالى flood mountain ، معود خونز غالق photographer , Jone grassland coast excited man-made مسرور ، متحمين archaeologist ruins اعالم آثار century columns قرن (۱۰۰ عام) lava ادمم بركانية mud flow ash · تدفق میں arch diary قىس light - lit flame پشعل - اشعل pilot hot air balloon ribbon Jack gentle

### **Natural Wonders**

The Sahara Desert Mount Kilimanjaro Victoria Falls بالات فيكنون Ngorongoro Crater

Help your child ravies

## Prosent Perfect Tense

Form

Subject + du / hur + P.P.

e.g. Tvo played tennis.

e.g. She har pizza

Negative

Subject + 1 to an / 1 and + P.P.

eg We

French.

e.g. He

early.

Question

/ - + subject + P.P ....?

e.g

you

a TV?

e.g.

he

a bike

+ 6/ -+ subject + P.P ....?

eg. Where cave you hee ? - I've been to Luxor.

### Keywords

I've just met my teacher.

Have you ever seen a lion?

No, I've never seen a lion.

She's a ready fed the hens.

She's fed the hens already.

## pictation on Unit (2)

## ristonana conseintra inclarativa (roma b c Mount Kilimanjaro is made of W.

thee ! four The voicances haven't ellipted for thousands of

b) weeks e) months

Mount Roman are is the tallest mountain in

Africa Asia Europe

At the tub of Kilman arc, there is

al plant

b) water

c) sand

! America d) snow

'! years

STATE OF THE PROPERTY OF THE PARTY. veis it was granaparents - weather - storm-chaser

Kama, s parents often went to other countries for their work. 'Usually, Kamal and his younger sisters stayed at home with their

. Kamal was very excited because his parents m

These are people who travel to places where a or another form of extreme 4). ..... is form

3

Rainbow Bridge is one of the largest natural arches in the largest natural arches It is also 200 million years old. It is on Lake Powell in Utah, USA II meters tall and it is made of red and brown sandstone. A river end hole in the sandstone and has formed the arch over many, many Rainbow Bridge has been a National Monument since 1910. If your a very hot desert. So, you should visit it in the spring or in the fair forget to take your water bottle and a sun hat.

### a tivilies On Unit (2)

- At Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or
  - The inain idea of the text is " Rainbow
  - ,ı) Lake
- b) Bridge U) Sea
- Country
- Rainbow Bridge has been a National Monument --
  - a) 2010
- b) 1920
- c) 1901

- You should visit Rainbow Bridge in the
  - u) winter u) spring -/ Summer

- a Answer the following questions.
- 4. How tall is Rainbow Bridge?
- 5. How do you get to Rainbow Bridge?



- Read and write I (True) or F (False)
- 1. Jubari left the wadi.
- 2 The crocodile looked like a dead tree
- J. Jubari is a lion.
- There are camels in the Wadi of camels.
- B Complete the following sentences
- i. The water was very, very
- · Jubari looked and saw a big

animal.



# Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

U						20.
1.	Thave	b)	never	c)	ago	d) since
	a) ever		and the second			you go yester
2.	Where			c)	did	d) are
	a) do	b)	have	•		traveled to the ly
3.	Have you		. k.	6)	ever	d) never
-	a) just	b)	already	4	0.00	1 HVOr have
.1	She				t daile a al	Luxor two days
4.		b)	wi∥ visit	c)	has visited	d) visited
	a) visits					***************************************
5.·	Where have you			c)	been	d) were
	a) be		being			pizza lastwa
6.	We		THE PARTY OF PERSONS ASSESSED.	رم	will eat	d) ate
	a) eat	b)	have eaten	U	Will Cor	-,
	,				toneos	

## 6. Order the words to make correct sentences.

- 1. parents Have Sudan to been Kamal's ?
- 2. got the We festival for tickets have .
- 3. countries Desert The Sahara covers eleven .



7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

A man-made wonder

**Guiding elements:** 

(The Sphinx - Giza - head - body - long - tourists - fantastic)

# Activities On Review (1)

#### Listen and choose the correct answer from a bir. The Victoria Falls is on the Zambezi c) River b) Lake a) Sea million cubic meters of water falls into a pig it anyon 2. Every minute, c) five b) four a) three the sig carryon 3. The water has g dred c) eroded b) stopped a) erupted makes a lot of noise as \* rais 4. The - sait c) juice b) oil a) water

## Read and complete the text with words from the box

## Archaeologists - man-made - natural - volcano - desert

which means The Great Pyramid is 1) can learn a lot about that people made it. 2) history from buildings like this. We can also learn a lot about wonders of the world such as the Ngorongoro Crater. For example, we which erupted millions or years ago know this was once a 4)

## 3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Have you ever visited a rainforest? In Rwanda you can see a beautiful rainforest in Volcanoes National Park. You will see a lot of different animals there like monkeys, snakes, and birds. If you are lucky you might see a gorilla, too. You must be very quiet as you walk through the lorest. You can't talk loudly to your friends and family. You don't want to scare the gorillas and other animals away.

## A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

- In Rwanda you can see a beautiful
  - b) rainforest c) desert a) field
    - d) storm

- 2. The underlined word " "means

  a) ugly b) sad c) calm d) bad

  3. You shouldn't the gorillas and other animals away

  a) protect b) scare c) love d) help

  Answer the following questions.

  4. What animals can you see in Rwanda?
- 5. How must you be as you walk through the forest?

## (4) The Reader

### A Read and write ( ....) or? (Faise).

- 1. Juban and his mother eat the desert daffodil.
- 2. Gazelles eat the leaves of the acadia trees
- 3. Jubari is going to look for Wadi of the Gazelles.
- 4. Jubari's mother asked him to torget what she taught him.

### B Complete the following sentences:

1. Jubari thought the mangroves were

for gazelles.

2. Jubari's thought the beach was

for gazelles

5	Character con	t				
1	1			my best	friend two hours ago.	
4-	a) see	b) sees	2)	have seen	) saw	
'n	We have				to Aswan.	
See 17	a be	there		being	been	
4	He is healthy		h	e eats fresh	vegetables and fruit.	
	and and	(5) but	0)	SO	d) because	
,	They met a man	1-05 h + 54 d-542 e 4-51	٠		works in a garden.	
	a) who	b) which	0)	where	d) whose	
3. She went to the pakery bought some bre						
٥.	a) but	b) so	c)	and	d) because	
6	This is the school				we learn.	
	a) which	b) where	c)	when	d) who	
6 October one warm to the contract of the cont						
1. natural The beautiful is in Africa world.						
2. ecosystem The Ariston an important is rainforest						
3. Island - volcanoes - are There many on Java .						
(7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:						

### Guiding words:

(get up - breakfast - walk - sport - fruit and vegetables - go to bed)

Healthy Hapits

\_ Review (1) -----

## IERW (1) PROJECT (1)

#### Cilantro



This plant is a herb.
It is usually about 45-50 centimeters

Transmission . .

Ithas a lot of green leaves. The seeds are white or light pink, Bees love them.

The flowers make a lot of small green fruit. Then this fruit turns light brown. These are the seeds which are called coriander.

This plant is originally from the area around the Mediterranean Sea. It grows in sunny treshwater ecosystems.

Cilantro is not endangered.

People use the leaves for lots of different things. For example, you can put them in wallads or soups. People also like the leaves with meat and fish.

People use the seeds in food and in traditional medicine. The ancient Egyptians used coriander for different types of medicine, too.

I like this plant because it is delicious and useful. My mom puts it in my favorite salad. I also like the smell of the leaves.

نبات 1

أوراق و

بنور 3

مياه عدية 4

سلطة 5

لديد 6

## NON-FICTION BILLIO

# INCREDIBLE PLACES AROUND THE WORLD read the listen.

There are some amazing places around the world which are very famous. For example, we all know the Sahara Desert, Mount Everest, and the Amazon rainforest. Here we look at some other incredible places which you might not know.

الله من العالم إلى ركال الشهورة حدار على سعدل المثال وتعلم الماكن وتعلم الماكن الرابعة

#### سرم اللويم-مرسم علم

Sharm El Luli beach is one of the most beautiful beaches on the Red Sea. Its clean, blue waters make it very popular with tourists. Divers also love going here because you can see many colorful fish.



You can sometimes see turtles, too. The beach is 60 kilometers south of Marsa Alam.

حيد در حدر سنة على تناق سحم الاحمور مناهه الزرقاء الصافية تجعله يحظى المرافية العديد من الاسماك الله الأنه بمكنك رؤية العديد من الاسماك حمايا دياً في ليدلاجي عضر بنية الساحي على بعد 60 كيلومترا جنوب مرسي علم.

### الحسر المعلاق-ايرلندا الشمالية

The Giant's Causeway is in Nortnern Ireland. It's made of around 40,000 black rock columns which rise from the sea, Scientists



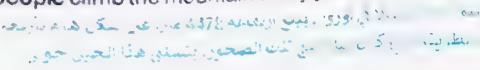
the sea. Scientists have discovered that they formed when a volcano erupted 50-60 million years ago, but some people say that giants made them so they could get to the Scottish Island of Staffa across the sea!

المحمدة في سمال المكانات المسال المكانات 
halp your child read the text.

### The Matth horn Switzerland

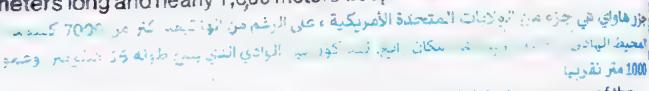
்ன இரையுற்கூற

Some people say this is the most beautiful mountain in Europe, It's 4,478 meters tall and has the shape of a pyramid with four sides. It's like this because of the way the ice eroded the rock. About 3,000 people climb the mountain every year.



### Traimea Canyon Hawaii, USA الحصود ويسا هاوي الولايات الصلاحا الاعارات

The islands of Hawaii are part of the USA, although they are more than 7,000 kilometers away in the Pacific Ocean. The Waimea Canyon here is an amazing place. Ariver has eroded a canyon which is 16 kilometers long and nearly 1,0,00 meters deep.



Waimea is the Hawaiian word for red water. It's called this because of the red soil which makes the river look red.

ويناهي كلمة هاواي للمياه العصراء. مطلق عديه عهازيسيب المردد المسراء التي لعيدل الفيار يبيدو احتدر Cerro Vicero-Nicaragua, South America

dua. adlanjah taahhhim-angligga

Cerro Negro is a volcano in Nicaragua and it has erupted more than 20 times in the last 160 years! However, it has not erupted

for more than 20 years, so it not usually dangerous. Its name means black hill and many people climb up its black slopes. When they get to the top,

many people surf back down again! . . . . في السنوات أن ١٥٥ أساصمة؛ ومع ذلك ، لم ينشج

# NON-FIGHO VILLADEN

# INCREDIBLE BUILDING AROUND THE WORLD Look and read.

We all know the famous man-made places around the world like the pyramids of Giza and the Sydeny Opera House but every jear people are always trying to build more and more amazing buildings. Here we look at some other incredible man-made places which you might not know.

بن الشهيرة التي من صنع الأنسان حول العالم مثل أهرامات الحيزة ودار أوبرا سندني ، من ما المناف المنافع المزيد والمزيد من المبائي المذهلة. هذا تنظر إلى بعص الأماكن ب بي من صنع الانسان والتي قد لأ تعرفها.

8.h. theca Alexandria. Alexandria, Egypt

ரமாக்கும் கோர்க்கார். அம்மாக்கார்க்கார்க்கார்க்கார்க்கார்க்கார்க்கார்க்கார்க்கார்க்கார்க்கார்க்கார்க்கார்க்கார்

Opened in 2010, the famous Bibliotheca Alexandria has space for eight million books! The beautiful modern building by the Mediterranean is the same shape as Alexandria's harbor, and has a 32-meter high wall with writing from languages through history.



- . . - درية انشيهيرة في عام 2010 بما فساحة لثمانية ملايين Silp على التحر الأبياعي المنوسط هو **نفس شكل مبناء البسكندرية** عبر التازيخ. مدا عليه عانه من اللفات عبر التازيخ.

1510. 14

Many of us live in tall apartment buildings where we have people living above or below us. But Habitat 67 is very different to most apartment



look like a big children's puzzle! Build in 1967, its apartments all have a terrace with amazing views over the city.

الكتاب منا في عمارات سكنية طويلة حيث بعيس فوقيد وحنث الماس، لكن المعنى المناها ويراور وحنث الماس، لكن المعنى الماسي ويراور ويراور وتحتوي على تواس مع إطلاك ودهنه من المديدة

# Beijing National Stadium, China

العين الوطنب، الصين

There are many amazing sports stadiums around the world, but not many are designed by artists!
Chinese artist Ai Weiwei designed the Beijing National Stadium for the 2008 Olympic Games with some architects.



and now 80,000 people can visit it for sports events. Most people call the Birds Nest because it looks like a place where birds lay their eggs!

المنال العديد من الأستادات الرياضية المدهشة في حميع أنح: العالم، ولكن بين الكثير منها مصمم من ألم الفنال الصدي العديم الفنال الصدي العدر المدسس الفنال الصدي العدر المدسس المعاريين, و لا تمكن أن تجتمع فيه 80 ألف شخص المساهد. وحدث الرحدة السداد المصادر الفاليور لأنه يبدو وكأنه مكان تضع فيه الطيور بيضها!

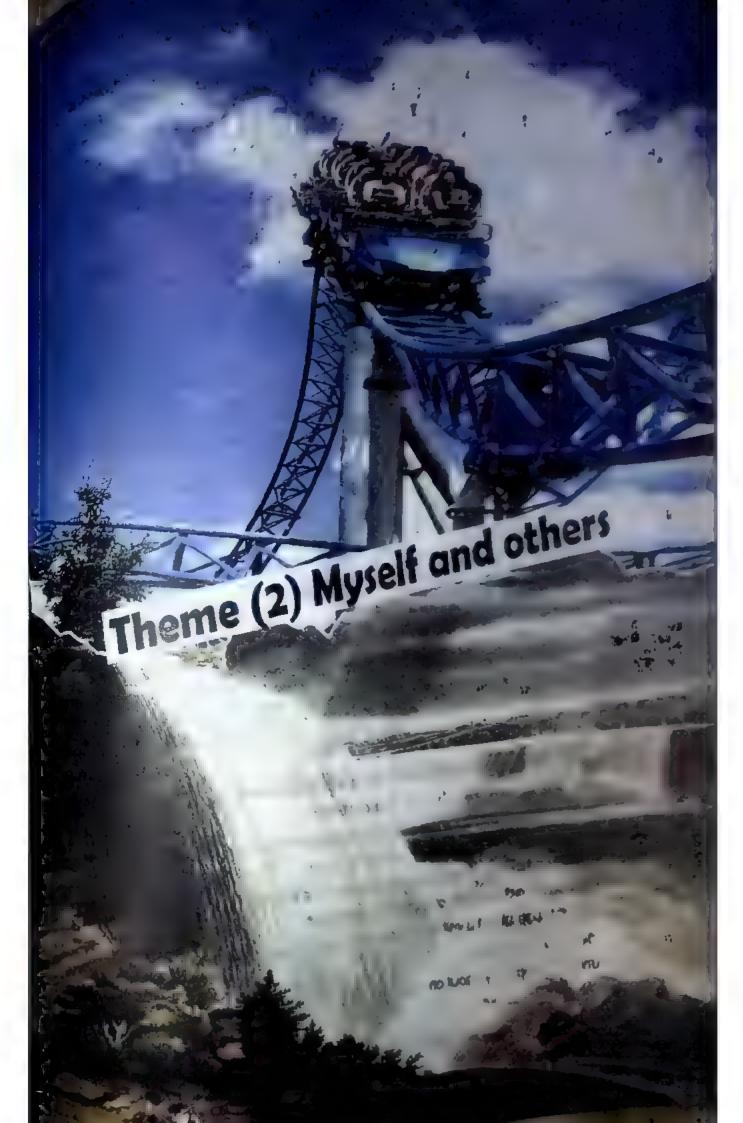
# ınstitute for Sound and Vision, the Netherlands

The architects of this museum like color! The building of the Institute for Sound and Vision is made of hundreds of colored pieces of glasses. Opened in 2006, the museum teaches you all about the media, including television radio, newspapers and social media.



"I I and the text.

بعد العهندسيون المعما، رون لهذا ،امتحف الالوارا ان درع معهد عدد برور مصدوع من مدات المنطع الرحام المده و عدم 2006 و منطق عدم المنطق المنطق المنطق المنطق المنطق المنطق المنطق المنطق والمنطق والمنطق والمنطق والمنطق المنطق  المنطق



# The Sem well sinul Niagara Falls, USA and Canada unit, the students talk about natural resources, and renewable and non-renewable resources. understand a play about finding dinosaur bones. • make sentences and questions using the second conditional. \*describe resources in ancient Egypt and do a quiz. \*understand a story about a blind girl and describe the physical properties of objects \*understand a description of a science experiment. \*write a report about a visit to a place and develop a topic using facts. definitions, and details. "understand a story about an experiment, use reported speech.

# Lesson (1)

## NATURAL RESOURCES

Look, listen and read.



methane (gas)



stone (solid)



soil (solid) أترداه



cloud (gas)



waterfall (liquid)



water (laurd)



solid



gas







# Natural Resources الموارد الطبيعية

#### Renewable

# Non-renewable

#### متحدة

the sun	شمس
wind	200
water	ماء

### فالمحتادة الم

coal	
	وحم
gas	غاڑ
metal	مفائل
stone	
wood	ر د فرو
soil	التربة الأراعية

#### Extra vocabulary

Marsa Alam	مدينة مرسى عنم	materials	مواد	pan
journey	رحلة	mine	منجم	sign
freezer	حهاز لنجميد (قابرر)	object	شيء	state
holiday		shape	شكل	steam
electricity	ا تکھوں۔	pale color	الهار باهت	gold
difference	اختلاف ـ فرق	container	eles	candy

#### Conjugation of verbs

#### Regular verbs amond a

	Present	Past	H.H.
melt		melted يدوب	melted
boil		<b>boil</b> ed يغلي	boiled
turn		turned بتعول	turned
pick up		picked up بلتقط	picked up
heat		heated يسحن	heated
burn	4	burned / burnt بحرق - بحثرق	burned/burnt
pour		poured	poured
flow		flowed بتدفق بسيل	flower

136 Unit (3) How we use our world

Help your child identify these words. نظار أن يتعوف على هذه الكلمات. 1055011 (1)

### Tireguar verbs

prese	nt Past	PP
build understand	froze بومد / بمحمد built سن built	frozen built understood
natural 1. 500 050	things we can use from nature.	
Thurse	a place where we get raw mate	nals from the ground
the chief die	things that come from the groun	nd, ike gord and coa
181. Bradic	means we can get more after w	/e use it
non-renewable	means we can't use it again	نير مىجىدة
a solid	has a fixed shape	مددميلية
a Igod	doesn't have a fixed shape and	itfows
کډ <u>ر</u> ه	doesn't have a fixed shape and	you can't see it

#### Important expressions and prepositions

look out of	يطومن	fixed shape	<b>سکل نابت</b>
turn from to	ينحول من إلى	fossil fuels	وقودجمري
Journey to	رحلة إلى	Sukarigold mine	منحم السكري لينهب
solar energy	الطافة الشمسية	getwarm	سحن

Help your child Identify these words.

Al-BAHER - Connect Plus (5) - First Term 117

#### Listen and read.

Salma's journe ito Marsa Alam pic ways will wante

It's summer and Salma and her family are going to

Marsa Alam for a holiday. Salma looks out of the car

Marsa Alam for a holiday. Salma looks out of the car

window and sees a sign to the Sukari gold mine. "What's

window and sees a sign to the Sukari gold mine. "What's

a mine,mom?"she asks. "It's a place where we get raw materials from

ground, like gold and coal."

د النظام من باقدم المجارة ويوي لاقية بمنظمة المحدد العظم فيه ما الراب المادي الأعل

"Are raw materials the same as natural resources ?" asks Salma.

"Yes, usually," says Mom. "Natural resources are things we can use from nature, like wood and soil. We use them to make the things we need. For example, we use wood to make tables, stone to build houses, and plans for food. The sun is a natural resource because it gives us solar energy make electricity."

ه دا المستعدا في شده او باف جهار على بعالين ادا اعدال ادا

"Our teacher says that coalis non-renewable, is that right?"

"Yes," says Mom. "Some natural resources like solar energy are renewable-the means that we can get more of the resource naturally after we use it. But some natural resources are non-renewable. When we burn fossil fuels such as coll and gas, we can't use them again."

الحديث عن عدا ترجيح الدور الأد العم يعطى المورد الطبيعية الكان على المدرد عن علاد الدورد بسكل طبيعي بعد

### Lesson (1)

"What's the difference between coal and gas?"
asks salma.

asks a solid," says Mom. "You can pick up "Coal is a solid," says Mom. "You can pick up a solid object, like your bag. It has a fixed shape. You can't usually see gases, although have a pale color. Gases move and change shape.""What about liquids, Mom?"



"Liquids don't have a fixed shape. You can't pick up a liquid which isn't in a container. Liquids can flow- for example, you can pour water into a cup.

مها "ماشو شرق من ندخه و نفاز". تسول رئم " متحتم سسا". "پیکنت لتداث جسم صلب، مثل حقالید" تموز دست را پیکنت العارات و تغیر شکلها!" تموز مستدی در در بر میوان ایس لها شکل بایس. لا یمکنت التفاظ سائل غیر موجود فی وهاد یمکن دست سامل غیر موجود فی وهاد یمکن دست سامل می موجود فی وهاد یمکن دست سامل می مرد در در در سام در سامل در سامل شیب ساد فی دو در سامل در

Did you know that some solids, liquids, and gases can change from one state to another?" says Dad.

"If you boil liquid water, it turns to steam which is a gas. If you freeze liquid water, it turns to ice which is a solid. When ice melts, it becomes a liquid again!"



به و بعود عدد و تسوس و بعارات يبدن ال بتغير من حالة إلى احرى؟". إذ فعت بغلى الفاء وهو عدد إلى شج تبعيد، عندما يدوي الجعيد، بدول الى شج تبعيد، عندما يدوي الجعيد، بدول سمال بعده تعدد وتت في معدرسه!" "تكني افهم ذلك بشكر أفليس الال، شكرا ، في فيد

# **General Activities**

بالنكتا فيلها بها والعنوم

1 Listen and choose the correct	answer from a, t	), C, or d,
Salma's family are going to     a) Luxor b) Aswan	→ Marsa Alam	foral
2 Salma looks out of the a) car 5) bus	c) taxi	d) train Window
3 Salma sees a sign to the Sukari a) silver 3) gold	c) bronze	d) metal mine
Mine is a place where we get at gas by solid	c) raw	d) row
2 Read and complete the dialo	g with words from	n the box.
mine - Marsa Alam	- Can - What - Wh	nen
'.' r Hello, Salma. Where di	d you go for a holi	day?
Salma : I went to 1)		
Mona · 2)		did you see?
Salma I saw the Sukari gold 3		
Mona : Did you enjoy your holi	day?	
Salma Yes, very much.		
Mona 4)	I go v	vith you next time
Salma : Yes, you can.	3	,
3 Choose the correct answer f		
1. Solids, liquids, and gases can ch	ange from one	to anoth
a) state b) star	c) base	d) type
2. When we	wate	er, it turns into stea
a) freeze b) boil 3. A	c) melt	d) drink
a) liquid b) gas	-3 - 41 4	
4. If you	c) solid	d) stone
a) burn boit		rater, it turns into
2) 5011	c heat	d) freeze
(20) Unit (3) How we use our world	Help your child deal w	ith such questions: مسك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسشلة

#### Lesson (1) 5. Sleam is a b) gas C) liquid a) solid d water 6. Ice is a b) stone a) solid Cr liquid d; gas 7. You can pick up a b) gas a) liquid c) solid d) steam 8. Solids have a . shape b) fixed a) changed s running - melted g. When you freeze water, it turns from a liquid to a b) solid d) cloud c) steam a) gas 10. Gold and coal are materials b) row c) liquid d) gas a) raw to make tables 11. We use ... b) cotton d) water ci wood a) paper fuels like coal and gas 12. We can burn d) silver b) fast ci gold a) fossil don't have a fixed shape. 13. . . . . . . . . . . . b) Gases c) Tables d) Chairs a) Solids Read and complete the text with words from the box stream - boiled - froze - ice - steam In science class today, our teacher put some water in a pan. She Some of the water turned to heated the water until it 1) . Then we poured the water into a container, and put it in and turned to 41 a freezer. The water 3) 19 Order the words to make correct sentences 5 1. fixed - A solid - shape - has - a - . 2. solar - The sun - us - gives - energy 3. boil - you - When - water, - turns -it - steam-to -.

## 6 Read the following text and answer the questions.

A mine is a place where we get raw materials from the ground gold and coal. Natural resources are things we can use from nature wood and soil. We use them to make the things we need. For example we use wood to make tables, stone to build houses, and plants for foot The sun is a natural resource because it gives us solar energy to make electricity.

Some natural resources like solar energy are renewable - this means that we can get more of the resource naturally after we use it. But some natural resources are non-renewable. When we burn fossil fuels such as coal and gas, we can't use them again.

The main idea of the			
a) natural resources	b) the sun	c) stone	d) energy
***************************************		. 1314-1 81	d) energy is a raw mate
a) Gold The sun is a	b) Water	c) Ice	d) Wind
The sun is a			resou
a) normal	b) natural	c) nature	d) wind
nswer the following	questions.	•	,

7 Write a text of FIF (56) words about:

5. Why are fossil fuels non-renewable?

Natural resources

Guiding elements:

( renewable - non-renewable - sun - wind - fossil fuels - solar energ

# 188<sup>5(6)</sup>111 (2)

### **LANGUAGE**









shovel	
جاروق	

dig بحقر

hole حفرة

bones عصم

### Extra vocabulary

mountain	جبل	gazelle	عزال
dinosaur	ديناصور .	weekend	عطنة مهابة الاسبوع
expert	خېپر	skeleton	هبكل عظمي
archaeologists	علماء الإثار	normal	عادي
real	حفيتي	enough	ب

#### Conjugation of verbs

Regular verts

	Present	Past	P.1
imagine		imagine d بتحيل / بنصور	imagine
decide		<b>decide</b> d بعرد	decide
plan		planned بحطط	planned
stay		ىقىم / بىۋى stayed	stayed
miss	•	منقد / باره ته <b>miss</b> ed	missed
Move		ರಕ್ಷಿಯ / ಚೈರಾರ್ <b>move</b> ೮	move 0

bregular verbs

y)

	Present	Pas	t P.P
qið .		dug يحذر	dug
fell		told بخبر	told
give		gave بعظی	given

Help your child identify these words

AJ-BAHER - Connect Plus (5) - First Term 123

			Outt (3	)	
	rtant expressions and prep	chonia			
	and prep	)0314	ب بالم		
	at expressions of	عنى الادص	taik io	22	
lmpo	rtantear	الخذر الدر	plan to	Jim I	
, the gro	ound	المال المالا التعييد		·	
take	cine	المستوالية المالية	move to	in po	ď
the sig	n	المهدد ر	give to	300	
a day		استعث لميوس	look tur	was well	
	1 (i)			1-	c
Fountian (	Geological Mark				
rand o	1	house	es estada	. 1	
i us	Inside a room in Grande	سي منزل الجد	داحل غرفة ف	: 1 zomal	
Scene 1	; Insur	Lildron?	100	The state of the s	)
	+omorrow,	Cillinia	1990	4	
Grandpa	سستعلول عد بر صفال	ountains	The state of the s	7.71	(
ararer	Tarek and lare going into the	nouritaino	The same of the sa		,
Donia	Tarek and Tares				
	ب أما وطارق إلى الحبال مع بي.	ما! ساذه	the state of the s		
	Luge a hov. pec	ople told	Chief the Man	4	
Grandpa	Really? When I was a boy, peomethat there were dinosaur b	ones in the	mountains		
Cucumia	me that there were dinosaur b	ل الباس ان هماك .	و شب بهبیاه احبر	عداد حداد	
	مسام بايعاقبوز في البعدان		CT 7.3 = 10.4	عارق:عطام دريا	
uel	Realdinosaur bones? Ithink so. I never saw them, b	ut my frien	d Ali was 👊	g,ng a noie	
Grandpa	Ithink so. I never saw them, b	ne .			
(Transpa	- A ho found Some Don	00.	ه ادهم و	المنافي والكاني الم	
	there and he found some bon مر حفره هناك ووجد بعض العظام	-I when we	e go to the m	Outttains.	
1	Moul Donia let's lane a silvi				
	We might find dinosaur bone	ع رون: انڈھے ال	الحاديد المسالح	المراق والأا دنيا وال	
	We might find dinosaur bones لد قد نجد عطام الديناصورات أيضاء	العاملية الجنبار	ناي السيرة	à :2 <u>amal</u>	
C. 2.	: In the car		: - tha	mountains,	
-Cene w		dinosaur b	onesinthe	,	
	Donia?			الماذا ستشعده	
	عدال يا دليا؟ عدال يا دليا؟	مابساسهور تا في ل	: إذا وجديا مصام ار hem home.	If there	
f)onia :	المحمل با دنیا؟  If we found dinosaur bones, I were a lot of dinosaur bones, I w	ould take t	neminoria.	ndpa. He's	
. Athline	were a lot of dinosaur bones, I v	would give	one to Gran	•	
	12 P 1				

were a lot of dinosaur bones, I would give one to Grandpa. He's very interested in dinosaurs!

Help your child read and listen to the play, مع طفلك أن يقوأ وبستمع إلى المسرحيه سناه دسصور والسر حدها الى المقرل، أذا كن هناك الكثير من عظام العيناصورات، فسأعطى

Hmm. I don't know. I think we should call an . If I found dinosaur bones, I would call the museum and tell them.

م حد المصريحيين د وحلت عقام بدهم ، فساديان استوسيه جيدوه

That's a good idea. And if the archaeologists from the museum 113 came, maybe they would find a whole dinosaur skeleton

د ب عاليد ودر من بمنحف ، فريما يحدون هيكل عظمي كامن استناصون

And if the skeleton went in the museum, they would put our names on the sign. It would say "Found by Donia and Tarek."

- رضع تهيكل العضم في المتحف ، فرنهم سيضعول أسمالنا على اللافنة. فقد يكون مكتونًا عامها وحدت من فيل دلما وطارقها

: Wow! That's cool. onia

, 1

المدرات

3: In the mountains

شيد 3: في الجيال

Here's the shovel. Let's start digging. Birnot

الأراك بيداء للجدر

face digs in the ground

عارف يحمر في الأرض.

Look! I've found a bone, Donia! Is it a dinosaur bone? Tale !

عمرى القد وحدث عضمة بادنيا هل هي عظم ديناصور؟

I don't think they're heavy enough to be dinosaur bones. They're Don a just animal bones... Maybe a goat or gazelle.

عدهد اب نقيله بما يكتي مكون عظام ديناصور. إنها مجرد عظام حيوانات... ريما عبَّرَة أو غزال

You're right. I've never seen a dinosaur bone in real life. Only Just the photos!

ت على حق. لم ار قط عظم ديناصور في الحياة الحقيقية. صور فقط!

· Well, why don't we visit the Egyptian Geological Museum in Dad Cairo soon?

حسناء لمادا لا فرور المنحف المصري الحيولوجي في انقاهرة قريبا؟

If we go to the museum, we'll see really big dinosaur skeletons. ה נינים

هسنا إلى المتحف، فسنرى هياكل عظمية كبيرة للديناصورات.

If we see real dinosaur skeletons, we'll know what to look for next Hirl time. Can we go tomorrow, Dad?

ومدى عظميه حقيقيه للديناصورات، فسنعرف ماالذي نبحث عنه في المرة القادمة فال بمكتبا الدهاب عباً يا أيَّ،

# Conditional (If) (لو/إذا) الشرطية

#### First Conditional

Form:

If + present simple , will + inf.

#### Usage:

#### We use the first conditional:

To describe events which will probably happen in the future.

يندم الحاله الشرطية الاولى لوصف أحداث من المحتمل أن تحدث في المستقبل.

We will see dinosaur bones if we go to the museum.

#### Second Conditional

Form:

If + past simple, would + inf.

#### Usage:

- We use the second conditional:
- To describe events we imagine, but probably won't happen.

سعدم الحالة الشرطعة الثانية لوصف أحداث نتخبلها ولكن من المعتمل ألا تحدث

(1) Ifit snowed in October, I would be very surprised.

I would be very surprised lift snowed in October.

#### Note:

The commais important when we start with (1).

126 Unit (3) How we use our world

Help your child learn the first and the second tonditionals. . المرافية الأولى والثانية. المحالة الشرطية الأولى والثانية.

Choose the correct answer from ", ", ", ", or a. 1. If I saw a lion in the street, I b) would be afraid. a) will d) may ?. If it in October, I would be very surprised. b) snows c) snowed a) snow d) snowing a fire, my parents would call the fire service. 3. If we b) sees c) saw a) see d) seeing 4. If we go to the museum, we see really big dinosaur skeletons. b) could a) would c) might d) will 5. If I ... dinosaur bones, I would call the museum and tell them. b) found c) finds a) find d) finding R If I found a phone on the ground, I take it to the police. b) may c) can a) will d) would a famous person, I wouldn't know what to say. 7 If I b) meets c) met d) meeting a) meet 8 If we go to the shopping mall on Saturday, I buy a new book. b) would a) will c) could d) might much money, she'll help the poor. 9. If she b) has d) having c) had a) have play tennis if we had free time. 10. We d) may C) would b) can a) will Read and translate with the correct form. ..... (would)buy a villa. <sup>1</sup>If I have a lot of money, I play well, I wouldn't win the match. ? If I iake) medicine, she will recover. 3.If she (Will) meet my friends. 4.lf I went to the park, I catches/the train if I don't run. 6-If you eat healthy food, you are a second of the second thave lenough time, I'd play with my brother. 7,11 ALBAHER - Connect Plus (5) - First Term 127 Help your child deal with such questions.

سأعد طفنك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

# Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

# digging - shovel - mountains - bones - spoon

Grandoa What are you doing tomorrow, children? Don-3

We're going into the 1)

Really? When I was a boy, they told me that there were Grandpa Tarek

Real dinosaur bones?

in the mountain Grandpa I think so. I never saw them, but my friend Ali was 3)

a hole there and he found some bones.

Tarek Wow! Donia, let's take a 4) .....

when we go to the mountain.

# Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

b) stays

1.	There were		a, b, c, or a.	
	There were dinos	aur		lan 11
2	a) robots	b) bones	c) tunos	in the mountain
۷.	wy mend Ali was		c) tunes	(1) phone
	a) playing	b) drinking	a note and he to	Ound some ball
3.	Grandpa is very in	nterested	c) digging	d) reading
	a) on	h) in	* *	dinosau
4.	If we go to the mi	O) III .	c) at	d) by
	We use a	D) skeletons	c) skill	d) sky
٠.	-1			to di
	a) towel	b) shove!	c) spoon	d\ ruler
6.	picty	games with m	ny friends if I see them	in the park toda
	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	b) will	2 mondo il risce fueli	rin the park too
7.	If I			a) mignt
	a) have	b) has	noney, I would build a	
8.		-/ Has	c) had	d) having
	a) will	h) would	go to the Egyptian Ge	
Q	If it was york had t	would	c) may	d) can
٠.	If it was very hot, I	would		ייוטרו זב

a) stay

c) staying

3

# Read the following text and appears

Last week I went on a school trip to the Egyptian Geological Museum Cairo. I went with my classmates. We learnt a lot there. We saw really big in Cairo. The museum is fantastic. The guide told us interesting dinosaurs. We spent a nice time there. We took a lot of photos. We came back home at eight o'clock,

- A) Choose the correct answer from a, or
- 1. We went on a school trip
  - b) tomorrow c last week a) yesterday . · last month
- 2. We came back home at o'clock b) 7 a) 5
- c) 6 d) 8 3. I went to the Egyptian Geological Museum with my
- a) friends b) classmates c) family
- d) parents B) Answer the following questions.
- 4. What did you see there?
  - 5. How is the museum?

#### 4 Order the words to make correct sentences

- 1. going They are the to mountains .
- 2. would do What you you if a bike had -?
- 3. bones I some dinosaur found .

## 5 Write a text of TTT ( N) words about:

### A trip to the Egyptian Geological Museum

# Guiding questions:

- · Where did you go? - How d d you go?
- · Who did you go with? - Wnat did you see?
- How did you find it? - When did you come back home?
- relp your child deal with such questions. Al-BAHER - Connect Plus (5) - First Term 129

# Lesson (3) RESOURCES IN ANCIENT EG

#### Key vocabulary

economy	الاقتصاد	fertile ,	
flax	نمات الكتان (خبوط الكتان)	linen	υα <u>ς</u>
bend	يئنې - يلوي	papyrus	ږدي

#### Extra vocabulary

mud	طين	successful	
agriculture	الزراعة	medicine	
jewelry	مجوهرات ا	mines	
copper	نحاس	tools	,
cooking pots	أوائي الطهي	limestone	ياي
temples	معابد	hieroglyphics	والهيروغليفية
forests	غانات	problems	ů.
bricks	قوالب طوب	the Eastern Desert	واء ا <b>لشرقية</b>
hives	خلايا النحن	The Nile Delta	سيل

#### Conjugation of verbs

#### Regular verbs

	Present	Past	P.P
flood	۵	flood ed بفیض	flooded
turn		turn ed يتحول	turned
die .	•	die d	die d
discover	b	discover ed یکتشف	discover <sup>ed</sup>
transport		transported ینقل	transport ed

### Lesson (3)

pregular verbs w

Ŋ

$\mu$	Present	ŧ	Past	PP
ıt		. the sold	sold	
seli		kept بحدد	kept	
<sub>build</sub>	•	يى built	· built	
bend		bent یس ۵۰۰۰	bent	

### Importable or pressions and propositions

work at	يعمل في	such as	غن
as well as	بالاصافة إلى	useful in	ىفىد ق
at first	في البدانة	get out of	محرج من
take from	يحدمن		

#### Listen and read.

Hello, my name's Mr Taha and I work at the museum. Iknow your class is learning about natural resources, so I'm here today to talk about resources in ancient Egypt!

مرحياء اسمى السيد "طه" وأنا اعمل في لمنحف، أعلم أن صفت بالماعن الموارد الطبيعية، بذلك أذ هنا ليوم للحديث عن الموارد في مصر القديمة!

Did you know that ancient Egypt was very successful because it had good natural resources? Agriculture was a very important part of the economy of ancient Egypt. The Nile flooded every year and made the soil fertile. Farmers grew lots of different crops, such as cotton and rice.

هل بعلم أن معار المديمة كانت تاجحة لتغاية لأتها كانت تمثيك مهارد طبيعية جيده ديت الزراعة جزءًا مهما حدًا من اقتصاد مصر القديمة. قاط النص كل عاد وحجل الرّية محمية

Do any of you know what flaxis? This tall plant has blue flowers. The plant turns yellow after the flowers die. Flax was important in ancient Egypt. People used it to make linen for clothes, as well as for strong rope.

كتان كان مهم في مصر التسلمة. سمخسمه الناس لصبع الملابس، وسيال الصا



Help your child read about resources in ancient الموارد في مصر المدامة المدام

Salt was also a very important resource in ancient Egypt, and they sold it to other countries, too, People used salt to keep food fresh. It was also useful in medicine and agriculture. Some of the lakes in the Nile Delta had lots of salt which people could take to use or sell.

مله المنهما حدا في مصر الفديدة، وداعوه إلى بيدان حرى أيضاً . استخدم نياس المنع للحفاظ على الطعام ربيس . ي كن مقيداً . صافى الطب و الرزاعة. بعض المحه ت في دلما النبيل بها الكثير من الملح الذي يمكن ان باخله الماس

Pictures of life in ancient Egypt often show jewelry and beautif objects made from gold! We think they discovered gold about 5,00

ومنظهر صمر الحدة في دايم السامة محوهرات واستال حمللة تصنوعة من الذهب تعتقد أنهم اكتشفوا الذهب مئذ ی ۵۰۰۰

At first, they found it in rivers, then they made mines to get more out of the ground. Archaeologists have discovered some ancient gold mines in the Eastern Desert.

علية ، وحدوه في الأنهار ، ثم استخدمها المناجم للحصول على المزيد من الأرض. اكتشف علماء الآثار بعض مناجم

Copper was another very important metal. It was easy to bend, and people used it to make tools, cooking pots, and knives, as well as jewelry. We can see a lot of these objects today in Egyptian museums.

النعس معدرُ أحر مهم حدا. كان من السهن ثنته وتشكيله، واستخدمه الناس في صنع الأدوات وأواني الطاهي والسكاكين س معوه راس. بمكندا أن توى الكثير من هذه الأشياء البوم في المتاحف المصرية.

Finally, stones and rocks were a useful natural resource in ancient Egypt, too. Because there were lots of rocks such as limestone, the ancient Egyptians could build the pyramids, and many other big and important buildings and temples. Boats on the Nile transported some of the stones across Egypt to the important cities.

سكن المصريس العدم عنا الإهرامات والعديد من المباي والمعايد الكبيرة المهمة الأخرى نقلت عوارت في نهر العلى المدن المهمة.

nanciel anciel

### Lesson (3)

## Propert Egypt? Do the quiz mancient Egypt? Do the quiz.

كم تعرف عن الموارد الطبيعية الأخرى في معر القديمة؟ قم بحل اللغز

#### WHAT IS IT?

Egyptians used this to make medicine. It was very important for helping with problems with the skin or eyes. There are hieroglyphics in ancient temples which show people keeping bees.

استخدم المصريون هذا لصنع الدواء. كان من المهم جدا للمساعدة في مشاكل الجلد أو العيون. هناك كتابات هيروعليفية في المعائد بقسمة لتي تضهر للناس تربية النحل.

a salt .

b honey

**c** milk

People used this strong plant to make things such as baskets and sandals, but the most important thing they made from it was paper. The ancient Egyptians made some of the first books in the world using this

استحدم الناس هذا النباب مقوي لصنع أسياء مثل السلال والصنادل ، بكن شم شيء فيتعود منه كان الورق. فيتم المصريون القدماء بعش بكتب الأولى في العالم باستخدام هذار

a papyrus

**b** dates

c flax

This natural resource wasn't easy to find in ancient Egypt because there weren't many forests. People could get it from other countries.

م يكن من السهل العدور على هذا المورد الطبيعي في مصر القديمة لإنه لم يكن هناك الكثير من العابات. بمكن للناس الحصول عليه من ببدان اخرى

a stone

b sand

c wood

People in ancient Egypt used this to build houses and other buildings. They took it from the Nile when it was soft and made it into square bricks. These were hard and strong when they dried

استخدم الناس في مصر القديمة هذا لبذء المدارل والعباني الآخرى. أخذوه من النبل عددما كان لبنا وصنعوا مله طوب مربع الشكل يصبح الطوب صلب وقوى عندما يجف

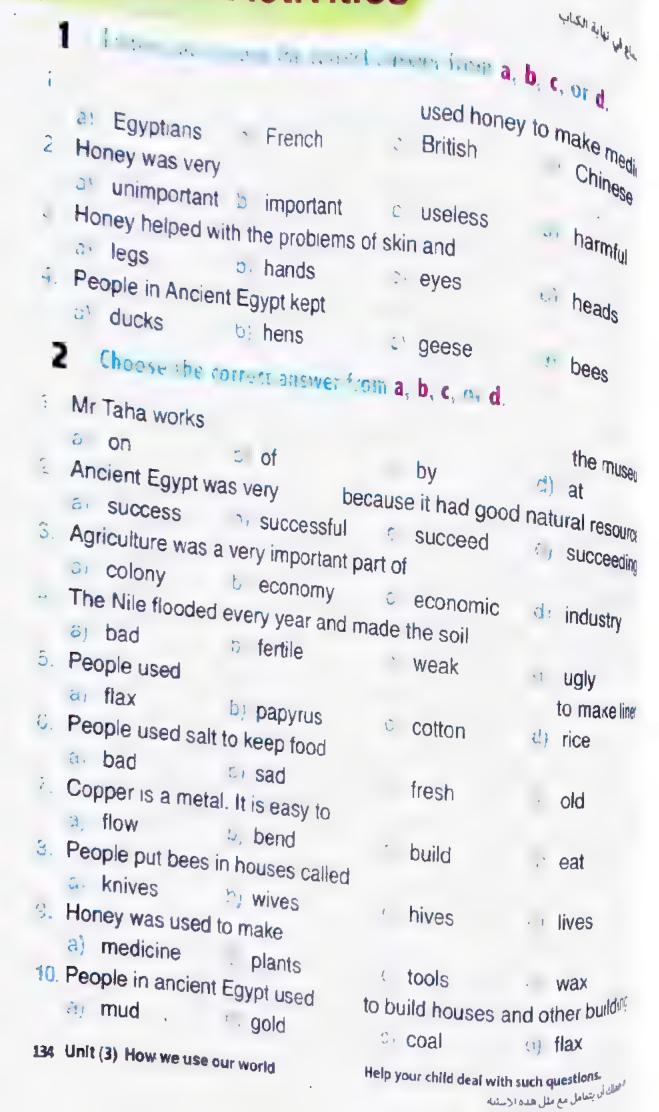
a mud

b gold

c coal

Help your child do the quiz.

Al-BAHER - Connect Plus (5) - First Term 133



Lesson (3)

## Read the following text and answer and pro-

- ople kept bees to make honey in ancient Egypt over 4,500 years Honey was an expensive but important natural resource Everyone Horrey

ago, Horrey

it because you could use it for many different things. People used it to liked it because sweet. They used it as a medicine, too If you cut yourself, you could put honey on the cut.

people made long, round houses out of clay for the bees. Then they put the clay bee houses, called hives, on top of each other in the shape of put the city few months, they moved the hives along the Nile in boats a pyrat the bees could find new flowers.

### A) Choose the correct answer from a, o. o or a.

- 1. The main idea of the text is the
  - a) pyramid b) honey
- c) money Nile
- 2. Bees live in houses called
  - a) hotels
- b) flats
- c) hives
- holes

- 3. Honey wasn't
  - a) expensive
- b) cheap
- c) important
- useful

- B) Answer the following questions.
- 4. How did people use honey as a medicine?
- 5. Why did people move the hives along the Nile?

#### Order the words to make correct sentences.

- 1. flooded the soil the Nite fertile made and
- 2. used flax People make to linen
- 3. Egypt very ...crent successful was

# Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about

Honey

# **Guiding elements:**

( bees - food - sweet - medicine - cut - flowers )

#### Key vocabulary

soft	ناعم / لين / طوي	mass	
hard	قاس / جامد	light	<b>W</b>
	لاصق / الج	heavy	U. W.
sticky	خشن	comfortable	de
rough		odor	. 25
gas liquid		texture	المنا / نسيج / فماش
solid	صلب	blind	رمس المفيف
			* CAE

#### Extra vocabulary

excited	متحمس المسرور	stone	JPs.
lovely	جميل	smooth	. ساماً الملس
fingers	أصابع اليد	amazing '	المنافل المنافل
object	شيء	kitchen	Žena,
wooden	خشبى	honey	يسل .
carefully	بحرص / بعدية	kind	b

#### **Definitions**

blind	can't see	عنى / كفيف
odor	the smell of something	إنحة
म्म्युऽः	describes how heavy something is	كبيه
tortul	enthis is the feel of something	سس

Conjugation	n of	verbs	Regular verbs
-------------	------	-------	---------------

Present	Past	P.P
arrive	J- arrived	arrived
pick	picked ينتقط	picked
close	closed يمنق	closed
touch	touched يلمس	touched
136 Unit (3) How we use our world	Help your child id	entify these words. المعالى المعرف على هذه الكلمات

	present	Past	P.P
		meant یمی / یقصد	meant
aean		came یاتی.	come
nean come		said يقول	said
say		felt يشعر / له منمس	felt
feel		knew بعرف	known
know		smelt بنے	smelt
smell		bent يثنې - يلوي	bent
bend	k awarae	cions and proposit	lions

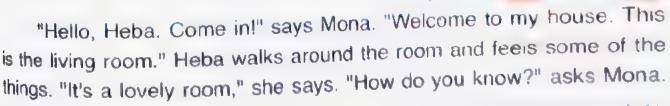
# Important expressions and prepositions

p 1	العلي في ال	good		*
arrive Itc. It	مرجبا بك ق	learn		,
welcome	يبحول حول	ask for		-
walk around	المام مماشا	play with		ے مع
sounds IC	يُحشِر من	put down	*	
getfrom ping-pong ball	كرة نفس الطاولة			

#### Listen and read.

Mona is excited because her cousin Heba has just arrived from Alexandria. Heba is band, which means she cannot see.





سون من الداند و الداند و الداند و المعرفي بيون هذه في قرقه المعيشة." بتعدول هيه في العرقة ويدمس بعض الأسناء عول الدها عافلة حمالته السالها من "كيف يمكنك أن بمرق؟"

Well, when you run your fingers over an object, you can feel its See So, I know that you have soft, comfortable chairs. And I like your old

Help your child read a story about a blind girl. Al-BAHER - Connect Plus (5) - First Term 137

wooden table." "How do you know it's old and wooden?"
"The old wood is rough, and it has an colon too. That means I can single

عيد الخشاية القلايمة " بسالها من "يه ما المكنك الأنفوق ها فسمه الدان منه الدان عالى المنابات على المسالها من ا هادان الخشاية القلايمة " بسالها من " شف يمكنك الأنفوق ها فسيمة وحشبية؟" ويجيب هنه " بحشب لقديم حسل المدام حسل

"Heba picks up a ping pong ball. "And I know this is a ball and not a stone because of its mass. It's light, but a stone is heavy,"

"You're amazing, Heba!" says Mona. "I'd love to learn more."



"We can play a game. First, I'll ask Aunt Leila to get me some things from the kitchen. You mustn't look! Then, close your eyes. Can you tell me what the things are?"

"That sounds fun!" says Mona's mother. She puts some things down on the table.

المكتم را بمعات الدراء الأراد بالمنت التراكيات المنتسب ال تعليم الأسداء من السطاح العبت إن لا تصدي الدر ممصى عينيك هن يمكن أنّ بحريريي ما هي الإشباء؟" معون والده من اهنا يبدو ممتعا!" إنها تضع يعض الأشياء على الطاونة،

Mona closes her eyes. First, she picks up a soft banana. "It's not hard," says Mona. "I can bend it, and it has an odor. Is it a banana?"

"Yes!" says Heba. "Now touch this carefully "Oh, it's soft and smooth, and it's sticky. Is it honey?" asks Mona. "That's right! You're good at this game, Mona!"

لقول همة "العما" - لأنَّ المدين عما بعدايه" بقول متى - وما معدَّاعم ولرج. هل هو عسل" القول همة "عنَّا بمحيح! الت

"Thanks, Heba. I know that I'll learn a lot from you while you're here!"

"I'm sure I'll learn a lot from you, too!" savs Heba.

ممراها همه اعدم التي سابعدم منك الكثير اثناء وجودك هما" تقول همه "آنا مناكدة من التي ساتعلم الكثير منك ايصا

Help your child read a story about a blind girl. معترطفنك أن يفرأ قصة عن فتاة كفيفة.

## Lesson (4)

# Ephysical penpertuge 3 11.,

physical property

Augr.

solid

sticky

comfortable

mass

Look and read about the physical propert and for the physical property and the physical physica



- It's a solid. It's hard. It's made of 🐇 You can't bend it. You can sit on it.



- It's a gas, It's in the air, It doesn't have a People need this.



- It's a solid, It's soft. You eat it. It's very coid. If it gets warm, it



it onto food or you You can It's a 🔻 , It's can cook with it.



. You see it when , and it's It has It's a you



. You drink it or cook with it. . It's It's a You can add it to coffee.

# General Activities

باتكا ميلية بيغ ومميه

1 Listen and	choose the corre	ect answer from	, or .
<ol> <li>Mona and Ha</li> <li>a) living roon</li> <li>Mona's</li> <li>a) father</li> <li>Heba asks Mona</li> </ol>	b) kitchen	c) garden got someth c) brother	d) bedroom ning from the kitchen d) aunt
	b) the windov	v c) her eyes	d) her hands
a) guava		c) tomato	d) banana
2 Choose the	correct answer f	roma, N, c, or 🕟	
1. *			erson who can't see
<ul><li>a) Deaf</li><li>2. The smell of so</li></ul>	b) Dumb mething is its	c) Blind	d) Weak
<ul><li>a) door</li><li>3. Glue feels</li></ul>	b) odor	c) mass	u) texture
<ul><li>a) rough</li><li>The elephant has</li></ul>	b) hard	c) sticky	d) stick
3) mass 5. Oxygen is a		c; texture	. It's very big d) smell
b Olive oil is a	b) liquid	c) gas	d) soft
a) solid	b) gas	c) líquid	d) hard
a) Milk	b) Steam		gas. It has no color.
8. This soft chair is	b) otean	c) Chair	d) Water
<ul><li>a) bad</li><li>9. Honey is sweet a</li></ul>	b) rough nd	cr hard	d) comfortable
10. A chair is a solid.	b) bad It's	c) sticky	d) rough
a) soft	b) hard	c, sticky	d) light
140 Unit (3) How we use o	ur world	Help your child deal wit	h such questions.
		سئلة.	ملط طعلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأ

### Lesson (4)

# Read the following text and answer the questions

Mona is excited because her cousin Heba has just arrived from Alexandria. Heba is blind. She can't see. Mona welcomes Heba to her house. Alexandra walks around the room and feels the texture of the chairs. They are Heba The old wood is rough, and it has an odor, too. Heba picks up a ping pong ball. She knows this is a ball and not a stone because of its mass. It's light, but a stone is heavy.

It'S	light, but	correct	answer	from	a, b,	COI	٠.
A)	Choose the						

- 1. Heba is
- b) blind c) dumb
- d) sad

- 2. The underlined word "excited" means
- a) sad
- b) happy
- c) funny
- d) kind

- The chairs are
  - b) uncomfortable c) boring a) comfortable
- d) useless

- B) Answer the following questions.
- 4. Why is Mona excited?...
- 5. How does the old wood feel?

# 4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. glue - is - The - sticky - .

2. to - my - Welcome - house - .

3. chairs - are - What - the - like -? 47115 ++ 4 4 4 5 4 4 4 4 4 4

#### Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about: 5

# A description of a strawberry

#### Guiding questions:

. What color is it?

- Is it a solid or a liquid?

- is it hard or soft?

- Does it have an odor?

Al-BAHER - Connect Plus (5) - First Term 141

What kind of texture does it have?

Help your child deal with such questions. معلاطفلك أن بتعامل معرال ما ما ما ما الله الله

# A SCIENCE EXPERIMENT

#### Key vocabulary

glass jar	syringe برطمان رحاس	ه (سردحة)
honey	ِ milk "	
water	maple syrup	القيقب
vegetable oil	dish detergent	رالادلمان

#### Extra vocabulary

EXIFA VOCADU	rary	
different	container ،	وعاء - حاوية
groups	sticky	رح - لاصق
thick	layer	طبقة
separate	amounts منتصل	كميات
coin	side عمية محدثية	جانب
mass	slowly	484

#### Conjugation of verbs

	Present	Past	P.P
pour		poured بصب	poured
mix		mixed بغنط/يمرج	<b>mix</b> ad
notice	•	notice d للاحط	noticed
add		add ed بيست	added
float -		floated بعنو	floated
wonder		wonder	wonder

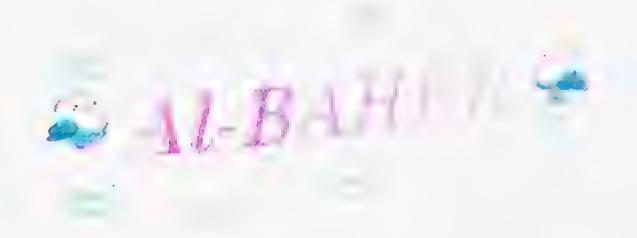
Lesson (5) pregular resta

Present

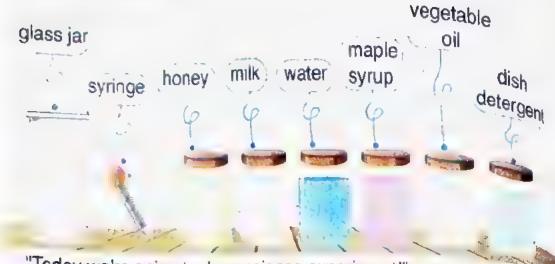
PP Past did بمعن done *∞* sank sunk do sink made 🗠 made make shown showed وصح البين show thought thought بعنقد think let let يسمح / يدع let

# Important expressions and prepositions

riment	mix together يجري تجربة	Bear States
doexperiment	give Out یکشف	
find Out	pour In تعفو (لاعلى / على السطح)	
float ontop	in the centre بعسد	
mix with	₩₩3 carry on	*
althe end		
go through	in the first	



#### Listen and read.



"Today we're going to do a science experiment!" said Mrs Hend." What happens when we pour different liquids into one container?"

ليوم سيقوم بتحرية عيمية!' قالت ميس هند."ماذا بحدث عندما نسكب سويل محتفة في ١٥٠٥ حد" المات think they mix together," said Amir. " Let's find out!" said Mrs Hend.

وْلُ أُمِرِ:" أعتقد أنها تَحْتَنظ معا". قالت ميس هند "دعونا نكشف!"

Mrs Hend had some small jars with these liquids: honey, milk, water, maple syrup, vegetable oil, and dish detergent. She also had some tall glass jars and a plastic syringe. She gave these out to groups of children. Then she showed them what to do.

كان لدى منس هند بعض البرطماذات الصغيرة التي تحتوي على هذه السوائل العبس والعبسا والما، وشراب الفيقب والزيت الندقي ومنطف الأطباق. كان لديها أيضا بعض البرطمانات الاحاجية الطويية ومحفية بلاسبيكية ورعب هذه الأسباء المعومات من الأطفال, ثم أوضحت لهم ما يحب القيام به.

"First, slowly pour in the honey. Don't let it touch the side of the jar'.

Amir and Tarek poured the honey in. It was sticky and thick. "Next, slowly pour in the maple syrup."

"أولاً، صب العسل بيطء. لا تدعه بلمس جانب العرطمان". مكب أمير وطارق العسل فيه. كان لزجًا وسميكًا. "بعد ذلك عبب بيطء في شراب القيف."

Amir and Tarek noticed that the maple syrup wasn't as thick as the honey. When they poured it, the syrup made a layer on top of the honey. "Look!" said Tarek " It didn't mix with the honey. It's on top."

لاحظ أمير وطارق أن شراب القيقب لم يكن سميكا مثل العسل. عندما سكبوه، كوّن 'لشراب طبقة فوق العسل. قال طارق "انظرا لم بختلط مع العسل، انه على القمة."

## Lesson (5)

الله the syringe to put your milk slowly on top of the syrup, in the the syrup, in the the same with dish detergent", said Mrs Hend.

They then added the dish detergent. Then they used the syringe to make the water and vegetable oil pour down the side of the jar. Amir and Tarek carried on adding liquids the slowly. At the end, their jar had six separate layers in.

ه صدفو سعف الأصابي به استخدموا حقلة تحمل الله و لزيت الثبائي ينساب على جوانب البرطمان. المراجعان منافعات مناف

"Well done!" said Mrs Hend." Why do you think that happened?"
"Is it because there are different amounts of the liquids?"
asked Amir.

سن منس هند حسيماً "لقادا تعتندان هناحدث؟" سال أمير القرائل هناك كمناب مختلفة من السوائل؟

"No, Amir, We had the same amount, but the liquids all have a different mass. The heavier liquids sink to the bottom. The liquids with a lower mass float on top!"

سب عس تعميد، لكن السواس جميعها ب كتلة مختلفة. نغوص السوائل الأثفل في القاع.

#### Vilook and tick.

Object floats sinks light he

a coin

a ping pong ball

a tomato

a button

a stone

honey

an eraser

Al-BAHER - Connect Plus (5) - First Term 145

#### Read and complete the dialog with words from the box. 1

#### mix - do - experiment - pour - did

Amir Do you like science? Tarek Yes, I do. Amir What are you going to 1) (Block I'm going to do a science 2) Anı What happens when we 3) different liquids into a container? Larek I think they 4) Amir Let's find out! together. OK. Choose the correct answer from , , , or Today we're going to a science experiment a) play b) do c) make d) eat We pour different liquids into a a) bag b) container c) paper d) carpet Mom uses dish to wash the dishes. a) detergent b) agent c) determine d) honey Honey is and thick a) solid b) hard c) sticky bad 5. When we put milk into the container, it made a white on top of the syrup. a) foam b) piece c) layer d) bar Doctors use a ... with patients a) needle b) syringe c) range d) ruler 7. Milk is a a) gas b) solid c) liquid d) water Heavy objects to the bottom. a) float b) sink c) think d) fly 9. If you put an eraser on water, it a) sinks b) flies c) thinks d) floats 10. I'd like to drink maple

b) syrup 146 Unit (3) How we use our world

a) food

Help your child deal with such questions. أعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسللة.

c) oil

d) honey

#### Lesson (5)

## Read the following text and answer the questions.

My name is Ali. I'm in primary five. I walk to school. I go to school five a week. I like science a lot. It's a very interesting subject. Today we're going to do a science experiment! What happens when we pour different liquids going to container? They mix together, Liquids have a different mass. The heavier liquids sink to the bottom. The liquids with a lower mass float on top.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1. Ali goes to school
  - a) by car b) by bus
- c) by train
- d) on foot times a week.

- 2 Ali goes to school
  - a) 3

- c) 5
- d) 6

- 3. The heavier liquids ...
  - b) sink
- to the bottom. c) float d) think
- B) Answer the following questions,
- 4. What are they going to do today?
- 5 Why does Ali like science a lot?

### 4 Order 12 words to make correct sentences.

- 1. is Honey sticky thick and .
- 2. sink The liquids bottom heavier the to .
- 3. are water Milk liquids and .

## 5 Write a rose of FIFTY (50) words about:

#### A science Experiment

### <sup>Guiding</sup> elements:

(science - coin - liquid - put - sink - mass )

Help your child deal with such questions. سائد طفيك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

Al-BAHER - Connect Plus (5) - First Term 147



## Key vocabulary

waterfalls نفق ا

tunnel : coastline البشروس / طانر الفلاسحة

flamingo

#### Extra vocabulary

sound موت orchards موت orchards موت orchards موت popular معنق history

WRITING ATTE.

port تفاصيل port

the Mediterranean

#### Conjugation of verbs

hear المعنف heard المعنف heard heard travel المعنف traveled traveled jump jumped jumped included included

#### Important expressions and prepositions

go on a trip	بذهب في رحلة	safe to	, ال
at the bottom	في القاع الماع	atthetop	ā.ē.
have fun	نمرح	onvacation	بازة ،
It's time to	حان الوقت ل	famous for	Heck

148 Unit (3) How we use our world

Help your child identify these words.

طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات

## listen and read. شلالات وادى الايال Report by Wash Minimus وادى الايال Report by Warl Mahdi

last week, our class went on a trip to the waterfalls Wadi El Rayan. It was beautiful! There are two there: One at the top of the waterfalls and one at the bottom. The waterfalls are 67 meters high, so the sound of water falling is very loud.

We couldn't hear our teacher talking very well!

في الاسبوع معادى ، ذهب فصلنا في رحله إلى الشلالات في وادي الريان. كان شيئًا جسلا يد جس معراء لذا فان صون عدر من مسلات ٦٠ معراء لذا فان صون

ب حداله لتمكن من سماع معلمنا وشو بمعمات بشكل جيد للغايه!

We learned that the water comes from an oasis in the desert. An casis is

a place in the desert with water. The water travels eight kilometers from the oasis to the lake through a tunnel.

مسم ل المحمد من واحة في الصحراء. الواحة هي مكان في الصحراء به ماه. يثنقل الماء ثمانية كينومبرات من الواحة إلى البحيرة عبر نقق.

Our teacher also told us that there are a lot of different birds living there. We saw some of the birds and my favorite was the flamingo.

لمانا معتمد الصادي صناب الكثير من الجيور المحتلف التي تعيش هناك. وأينا بعض الطبيور وكان المفصل بدي هوطار

Then it was time to have some fun. We jumped into the bottom take and went swimming. It is safe to swim there, and it helped us cool down after along day.

ثم حال الوقت للحصول على بعث السعة. قفات لي البحوة السفلية وذهبنا لسياحة. من الامن السياحة هناك) وقد ساعة

list your child read a report about a school trip.

Al-BAHER - Connect Plus (5) - First Term 149

ساعد طفلك أن يقر أ تقريرًا عن رحلة مدرسية



#### Listen and read.

## Damietta. A report by Gameela Hassan

Damietta is a city on the Mediterranean coast of Egypt. It has a long, beautiful coastline and many people like to go there on vacation.



ينط هي يدينك على ساحل البحر الأنبض المتوسط لمصر. له خط ساحلي طويل، وحميل وكثير عن الناس بعسول للهاب إلى هناك في الإحارة.

Ras El-Bar Island is one of the most popular places to stay there. There are also many beautiful gardens and orchards to see. Orchards are places where fruit trees are grown. Damietta is also a busy port and an important fishing center.

It has the largest number of fishing boats in Egypt. It is an important place for agriculture, too. Agriculture is the practice of farming. Crops such as rice, fruit, cotton, and date palm trees are grown here for the Egyptian people and also to sell to other countries.

بها اكبر عدد من الدارب الصيد في نصم. إنها مكان مهم للورغة ايضا الزرعة هي ممرسه الوراغة، نورع المعاصين مثل (القواكة والعصر واشتجار التختل هنا للشعب المصرى وانضا لنيعها إلى بلدان أحرى

Damietta is a busy city with a famous history but it is also a beautiful modern city. I'd really like to visit Damietta one day.

مط مديد مزد عمه ذاك دريخ مشهور ولكنها أيضا مدينه جميله وحديثة. أود حق ريارة دمياط يوما ما

## How to write a report

You should include facts, details, and definitions about the place you visited in your report.

poresearch to make notes.

### A trip to Luxor

Guiding elements:

1. Where is the place? 2- What did you do there?

3- What things, people, or animals did you see there?

4-Why did you enjoy your visit?

#### A model report

Last week, our class went on a trip to Luxor. It was beautiful. There are many temples there. Al Karnak Temple is the most famous one there. We learned about the Valley of the Kings. It was fantastic. Our teacher told us that there were a lot of things to do there. There are many ancient sites to see there. I enjoyed my trip because it was fun and interesting.

" Look and write a report about your trip to



1 Brant	and comple	n the dalog	with	words from	the the	b <sub>0x</sub>
	enjoy - f	lamingo - Wel	nt - v	raterfalls -	go	
<b></b>	Where did	your class go	last	week?		
MIII	They 1			to	) War	li Er .
1.0		you see there?	?			li EL-Rayan
197:	The D	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,				
b - b		s did you see	there	?	001	meters high
	I saw the		.,,,,,	•		
· l'éte.	Did you 4					1
4117	Yes, we d			•		· your trip?
_	165, WE U	i d				
2 (noss	se the corn	ct answer from	ma,	b, c, or d.		
Last wee	ek we went	a trij	p to t	he waterfalls	s of W	/adi El-Rayan
a) in	<b>b</b> )	on	c)	at	d)	by
. A/An			is a	a place in th		ert with water.
a) lake	•	oasis	C)	park .	d)	island
3. My favor					is	the flamingo.
	nal b)		C)	oasis		thing
	a has a long a		0.			erranean Sea.
		many beautif		oasis	<b>G</b> J	coastline to see.
a) ocea		orchards		lakes	dì	buds
		o to Damietta			-/	vocations
a) on	b)	in	C	at	d)	of
Damietta	a is a			city wi	th a f	amous history
a) lazy	bj	busy	C	tall	d)	bad
8. Agricultu						t-wind
play	ing	running		swimming		
152 Unit (3) H	ow we use our w	vorid	Help y	our child deal wi	th such	questions سعرطعيك أن متماما

## Read the following text and an over the questi

pamietta is a city on the Mediterranea partie and many people like to got or the state of the most popular places to some and is one of the most popular places to stay and arrest and orchards to see. Orchards prauliful gardens and orchards to see. Orchards are provided to the property are provided to the provided to t Damietta is also a busy port and an income is the state of the state o the largest number of fishing boats in Egypt. Damietta is a busy only with glamous history but it is also a beautiful, modern city. Id really like to 150 pamietta one day.

### Choose the correct answer from . Gr

- The main idea of the text is
  - a) Damietta b) Egypt
    - c) orchards d, por:
- 2 Ras El-Bar island is one of the most b) popular a) funny
  - places to stay there c) expensive d) boring
- 3. Many people like to go to Damietta on
  - a) Saturday
- b) foot
- c) vacation il a bus
- Answer the following questions.
- What are orchards?
- L. What is Damietta famous for?

### Write a text of 18 (50) words about.

#### A school trip

#### **Guiding questions.**

- ·Where did you go?
- ·How did you go?
- -What did you see?

- What could you do there?
- Why did you enjoy there?

## LANGUAGE



#### Read the story.

"OK, students" said Mrs Hend. "Today we're going to do a science experiment.

You can work in groups of three. There is a solid object in one box, and a container of liquid in another box. You have to study them and answer some questions."

وس الاستاذة هند "- سنا الها مثلاث ". ليوم سنفوم بتجربة علمية لمككم العمل في محسوعات من شرقة طلاب، توجد جسم صلت في صندوق وحد، ووعام به ساس في صندوق حر لمكم فراستها والاختام حدر يعس الأستلة .

Lara was sitting on her own, but Reem and Dina were sitting in front of her. Reem turned around and spoke to Lara" Lara, Mrs Hend said we could work in groups of three. Would you like to work with us?"

كانت لازا بجلس به ه ردها ، نخر اردم وديدا كادنا تجلسان امامها. استدارت بم وتحدثت إلى لارا قائلة" با لازا ، الوسادة همد والت أتما يمكن أن تعسن في محموعات من ثلاثة. هل بودين العمل مينه:

"Oh, yes please," said Lara happily. The girls sat together, and they took out their pens and notebooks. "OK" said Dina, "What do we need to do?"

فالت لارا بسعاده: " وه العلم على فضلك"، جنست الفتيات معا، واحرجو، فلامهم ودكائرهم

Lara looked at her notes. "Mrs Hend said there was a solid object in one box and a container of liquid in another box." "That's right" said Reem. "She said we had to study them and answer some questions." "Great, let's get started!" said Dina.

، فيلم فيلك في فيا أن المنظول الحراء والمناطقة المنظول الحراء المنظول 
154 Unit (3) How we use our world

Help your child read the story.

الم طفلك أن يقرأ القصة.

Lesson (1)

## Reported open;

He said, " I play the guitar well".

He said that he played the guitar well".

rieported)

## The steps

o said said

said to \_\_\_\_\_ told

We omit " " and put that or (we can omit "that ).

3 يتم يحويل الصفائر حسب المتعلم والمحاطب

Direct Speech	Jebor sa zhezek Miligi <del>no</del>	Thou Speech 8	l <mark>i pileò</mark> Perony, Sp Î	045.	iul ulao Pepartau Speech
i	, he / she	me	him / her	my	his / her
you	I / we	you	me / us	your	. my / our
We	they	us	them	our	their

سے حقیق لیمان ہود البیم حی والبیم جی البیمی ہے ۔

رنيارة	أسماء الإ	زميق	التعبيرات الإ	व्यक्त व	اليونياك
Direct Speech	hopp, ed Speech	Direct Speech	Ly Same		
this	that	today	that day	tonight	that night
tnese	those	tomorrow	the following day	now	then
	te lla	yesterday	the day before	ago	before
here	there	last week	the week before		

Help your child use reported speech.

Al-BAHER - Connect Plus (5) - First Term 155

ساعد طعلك أن يستخدم الكلام الغير مباشر-

## We change the tenses like this with (said / told):

Direct Speech	Reported Special	Direct Speech	Reported Speech
am / is	was	can	could
are	were	will	would
have / has	had	may	might

6 حويل الأرسة

#### الأزمنة

Derect Speech

Reported Speech

Present Simble

Past Simple

e q. Walaa said "I ike English."

Walaa said that she liked English.

Přesent Continuous -

Pasi Continuous

e.g. Ali said to me "I am watching TV."

Ali told me he was watching TV.

Past Simple / Past Perfect

eq Ahmed said "I saw a bird."

Ahmed said he saw / had seen a bird.

Mucals

Past Middait

e.g. She said "I will travel tomorrow."

She said she and travel the following day.

e.g. He said "Losa swim,"

He said he could swift.

156 Unit (3) How we use our world

Help your child use reported speech.

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم الكلام الغير مياشر

#### Lesson (7) Choose the correct word(s). Mona said she b) likes playing tennis. a) like 2 Ali said he sometimes C) liked d) liking b) have eggs for breakfast. a) had c) having 3. Khaled said he d) has b) will SWIM. a) can n) may d) could 4. Amr said he be ready to carry things. b) will a) is c) can d) would 5. Mazen said it hot and sunny b) are c) was a) is d) can 6. Omar said, "I ride a bike." b) am a) can c) are d) have Choose the correct word(s). 1, "Dina ...... animals," said Mom. b) loves a) love c) is loving d) loving play the guitar." said Noha. 2 11 ...... b) could c) am d) would a) can 3. Shady said Mr Ahmed in Alexandria. b) working c) works a) work d) worked 4. Eman said she cooking with her Morn. a) liking b) like c) liked d) likes 5. Mona said it cold and rainy. d) were a) is c) are b) was Aya said she to visit the park. a) want d) wanted b) wanting c) wants Read and complete with the correct form. 1 He said he วลก<sub>ร</sub>wim. <sup>2</sup> She said she lay tennis. 3.Waei (says) his favourite lesson was science. Ali said he will)come early. <sup>5</sup> Rola said she (grato school. Help your child deal with such questions. Al-BAHER - Connect Plus (5) - First Term 157

ساعد طعلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

## **General Activities**

بالتكا، قولهن <sub>ل</sub>يغ ولعنوال

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1.	Today we're goin	g to	do a science				
	a) complement	b)	experiment	С	expert	ű)	survey
2.	You can work in		145 w 45 1 0 +655 P A				The Of the
	a) groups	b)	classes	C)	Herus	Cij	Doxes
3.	There is a.		r aponeer annotere ten a care			obje	ect in one box
	a) liquid			C)	gas	d)	steam
4.	You have to stud	y ar	nd				me questions
	a) ask	b)	answer	G)	delete .	d)	Wonder
7	Choose the co		4				
_							
1.	Would you like to						
	a) at	b)	by	C)	with .	d)	on
2.	Water is a						
	a) solid						
3.	He said he						_
	a) can	b)	could	C)	will	d)	may
4.	Amira said she				to the lil		
	a) go						
	Mariam said she						
	a) like	p)	likes		liked		
כ	Fares said he	. 1			ping to play fo		
7	a) is	(a			has		
<i>(</i> .	Mona said, "I	to S	+ + ++ (		6 +1 +5 5+445+5 B + +		to the pain
0	a) go	(מ	goes			d)	to go
0.	Ziad said, "I	in second			6 *) +==f== ==+++ = = = +)		swim.
	a) am			C)	had	<b>a</b> }	nave money
3.	Magdy said, "I					47.74	money
10	a) needs		need	C)	needed	<b>a</b> )	needing
10.	Mom said it	b)		- \		ا ا	10t and some
	a) is	W)	are				
158	Unit (3) How we use o	ur w	orid i	leip y	our child deal with الأسئلة	such ( دل هذه)	questions. مخدطمیل آن پتعامل مع م

\_esson (7)

Real lies in the said styles . . .

My name is Mazen. I'm in primary five. I like my school very much. My flavorite lesson. Yesterday I went on a school trip to the science is my favorite lesson. Yesterday I went on a school trip to the 3 science Museum. We learned a lot about the environment and saw a lot of we enjoyed our time there. It was a vonce science will be enjoyed our time there. It was a very exciting trip. I talked to my things, about this visit. class about this visit.

choose the correct answer from . . or .

Science is a

food c) subject (a) season a) sport is Mazen's favorite lesson.

a) English Science e) History Arabic very much.

3. Mazen likes his street ) bike school el club

By Answer the following questions.

4 Where did Mazen go yesterday?

5 What did they learn about?

#### 

1. to - you - need - Do - a calculator - borrow - ?

2. visiting - like - I - park - the - .

3 a science - do - Lets - experiment .

4 said - it - Mom - cold - was - rainy - and - .

#### 

#### A visit to the museum

### **Guiding questions:**

·Where did you go? - How did you go?

·Who did you go with? - What did you see?

Why did you enjoy the trip?

Help your child deal with such questions.

## Writing Corner

#### Vatural resources

Natural resources are things we can use from nature, like WOOJ and soil. We use them to make the things we need. We use wood to make the plants for food. The sup is tables, stone to build houses, and plants for food. The sun is a natural resource because it gives us solar energy to make electricity. Some natural resources are renewable, but other natural resources non-renewable such as coal and gas.

## SIN MICIENIA CONTINUE

Ancient Egypt was very successful because it had good natura resources. Agriculture was a very important part of the economy of ancient Egypt. The Nile flooded every year and made the soil fertile, Farmes grew lots of different crops, such as cotton and rice. They used flax to make linen for clothes. Stones and rocks were useful natural resources ancient Egypt. They could build the Pyramids and temples.

#### Honey

Egyptians used honey to make medicine. It was very important for helping with problems with the skin or eyes. There are hieroglyphic in ancient temples which show people keeping bees. Honey was a expensive but important natural resource. People used it to make foot taste sweet. They put bees in houses called hives.

## and the first the side of the

Last week our class went on a trip to the waterfalls at Wadi El Rayar It was beautiful! There are two lakes there. The sound of water fallings very loud. We learned that water comes from an oasis in the desert a place in the desert with water. We saw some of the birds and my favority was the flamingo. We had fun and it was a fantastic day.

# Review on Unit (3)

## Natural resources

Man	1			
	ا فحم	date	economy	
coal	حصیب	flax	linen	
fertile	طين	pale	mine خب ليون	استانيم
mud raw materials			ا مود حام	

## States of water

	solid	gas ou	
liquid	freeze	melt بتجمد	بدون
boil			
fixed shape	شکل ثابت		

## Physical properties مرسيه الم

bend	hard يطوي	mass رحشن - صلب	
pend	a a lanuah	soft حثن	
odor	rough		
sticky	texture الزج - لاصق	السيح المسيح	
Slicky			

#### Stories , was

			طانو الفلامنجو	hole	حفره
dig	بحفر	flamingo			
sink	يغطس / يغوص	shovel		tunnel	بقبي
skeleton	هبكل عظمي	expert	حببر		

#### First Conditional

Form: If + present simple, will + inf.

Usage: We use the first conditional:

To describe events which will probably happen in the future.

e.g. If we go to the museum, we will see dinosaur bones.

#### **Second Conditional**

Form: If + past simple, would + inf.

#### Usage: We use the second conditional:

To describe events we imagine, but probably won't happen.

e.g. If it showed in October, I would be very surprised.

### Reported speech

#### Direct speech .

الكلام لمباشي

The words that a person says

e.g. Seleem said, "I like reading comics."

#### Reported speech

للام الغير المباشر (الكلام لمنقول)

To report what a person said.

e.g. Seleem said he liked reading comics.

#### Notice the changes --

لاحظ النغييرات

e.g. Fareeda said, "I can play tennis."

Fareeda said she could play tennis."

Ohange the subject according to the speaker.

Change the verb from present to past.

We don't use speech marks.

162 Unit (3) How we use our world

Help your child revise unit (3).

# pictation on Unit (3)

#### Lesson (1)

عاز الميثان

برية

شلان

#### Lesson (2)

.... جاروف

حفرو

#### Lesson (3)

الاقتصاد

-ت الكتان (خبوط الكتان)

يسي - بلوي

#### Lesson (4)

دعم / لين / طرى

قاس / حامد

لاصق / لزج

حار

صلب

#### Lesson (5)

. .... برطمان زجاحي

..... , ربت ساتي

#### Lesson (6)

.. النشروس / طائر الفلامنحو

## **Activities On Unit (3)**

بالكلا قيالها لها إلى

## Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d

to build houses and other building 1. People in ancient Egypt used a) mud b) gold d) sand

They took mud from the

a) lake

a) wrong

b) Nile

when it was so c) ocean d) sea

They made mud into square

a) picks b) bricks

c) chicks

d) luck

The bricks were hard and

c) weak

.. when they dried d) soft

## Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

#### enjoy - visited - train - Alexandria - play

Ali: Where did you go last weekend?

b) strong

Omar I went to 1)

Ali: How did you go there?

Omar By 2) ..... Ali

What did you do? Omar 13)

Alı ... Did you 4) Alexandria Library

··· ······· your time?

Omar Yes, I did.

#### Read the following text and answer the questions. 3

My name is Nada. I live in a big city. It's a very exciting place ! live. It's quiet and comfortable. I can do a lot of activities and meet a lot of friends. I love my city very much, but I have a big problem. The traffic is always busy on my way to school, so I sometimes go to school late. I takes me an hour to reach school. There are many places to visit in the city.

#### Activities On Unit (3) choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. Nada lives in a big ..... d) city b) house c) palace The underlined word "late" means not d) young c) big a) small hour to reach school 3. It takes Nada d) one b) three c) two a) four Answer the following questions. What's the big problem Nada has?

#### The Reader

## A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

The dugong was called "Donga".

5. How is Nada's city?

- 2. Donga lives in the mangrove forest.
- The Nubian ibex lives in Hill Elba.
- Gebel Elba was very steep for Subira's legs.

## Complete the following sentences:

Nasser 1. Jubari came to

2. Jubari's mother taught him not to stay near animals with big

#### 5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1. Hani said that he
- a) eat b) eats
- c) will eat
- PiZZa d) ate

- 2. If I have money, I

  - a) will b) would
- c) could
- buy a car d) might

- What would you do if you
  - a) have b) has
- c) had
- a lot of money d) having

- If you studied hard, you

  - a) will b) would
- c) may
- SUCCES d) can

- Fareeda said she
  - a) can b) will c) may
- Swim we

6. If she

ķ

d) could to the museum, she'll see dinosaur bone

- a) go b) goes

#### c) went d) will go 6 Order the words to make correct sentences.

- 1. are Coal gas and resources non-renewable .
- 2. linen make People flax from .
- 3. liked honey Who ancient in Egypt ?
- 7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

#### **Papyrus**

#### Guiding elements:

(Ancient Egypt - used - plant - baskets - paper - books)

## Wefre on the move A roller coaster in Egypt in this unit, the students will ... explore how bikes move. Identify, understand, and use question tags. read and follow instruction for making two different paper airplanes. read a science-fiction story about flying and gravity. understand blogs about jobs in science. write an email using sequencing words. understand a story about the first man to fly.

Lusson (1)

### MY NEW BIKE

Listen and say.



brake

فرامل



pedal

دواسة / بدال



bike collection



wheel

عجلة

#### Extra vocabulary

cycling push force

pull force

speed

science lesson

parents

grandparents ركوب الدراجات

hill قوة الدفع

transportation قوة السحب

safe places سرعة

cupboard حصه العموم

الوائدان

الجداد

وسنل مواصلات

الملكن آمنة

لولاب/ خوالة

## Lesson (1) Conjugation of verbs

#### Regular verbs معلمه

Pre	sent	Past	P.P
		cycled يركب دراجة	cycled
ycle .		pushed يدفع (للأمام)	pushed
<sub>ous</sub> h	,	pulled یسحب	pulled
pull		stopped یونف	stopped
stop ,		slowed dow يبطئ	•
slow down			
pass		passed بعرعل	passed

#### Irregular verbs ممنيمه

	Present	Past	PP
ride		rode یرکب	ridden
fall	8	fell يسقط/ية	fallen
put on	بغط على	put on يرتدي / يـــّ	put on
fly		flew يُعتبر	flown
throw	ن	threw بدر/بقذا	thrown

#### Important expressions and prepositions

It's great!	إنه شئ رائع!	I see.	فينت
Here I go!		Be careful!	کن حربتیا (حدرا)!
good at	جيد في	up and down	اعلى وأسفل
getin go up	يدخل / يركب سيارة	at-60 km/h	بسرعة ٦٠ كيلومتر في الساعه
80 down	يعبعد	get to	حصل إلى
	يهيط	get out	بحر
Imtop of the class.		Km/h = kilometer an hour	

أنا الأول على الفصل،

كبومترفي لسب

#### Listen and read.

Marre

Nabil, have you seen my new bike? I got it last week from my

الم رأيت دراجتي الجديدة؟ حصلت عليها الأسبوع الماضي من أجدادي المباري المديدة عليها الأسبوع الماضي من أجدادي

It's great! Shall I get my bike and we can cycle together?

الله لشيء واقع! هل أحضر دراجتي ونركب الدراجات معا؟

Well, I haven't ridden a bike before. I don't know how. My parents want me to learn.

و حسنا، أنا لم أركب دراجة من قبل. لا أعرف كيف. والداي يربداني أن اتعلم ركوبها

I can teach you. It's easy. It's all about the forces which we learned about in our science lesson yesterday.

ين. يمكنني أن أعلمك اللام سيل. الأمراكلة يتعلق بالقوى التي تقلما منها في درس بعقوم السن

/lazen

10 10

What do you mean?

باز: ماذا تقصد؟

You use force to get the bike to move by pushing the pedals. You also use force to stop the bike, by using the brakes. That slows down or stops the wheels. If you want to increase your speed, push the pedals more quickly.

ما يمكنك استخدام القوة لتجعل الدراجة تتحرك عن طريق دفع البدالات. يمكنك أيض استخدام القوة لوقف الدراجة ، وذلك باستخدام الفرامل. هذا بيطي أم يوقف العجلات إذا كنت تربد زيادة سرعتك ، اضغط على البدالات بسرعة أكبر.

I see. I should be good at cycling then, as I'm top of the class in science! Here I go!

«رن انا فهمت، يجب أن أكون جيدا في ركوب الدراجات إذا، لأنني في لقمة في درس العلوم. ها أنا ذا!

Good. You'll need to cycle harder when you go up that hill.

ل: جيد، ستحتاج أن تقود الدراحة بقوة أكبر عندما تصعد هذا التل

Do you mean use more push force?

هل نقصد استخدام المزيد من قوة الدفع؟

Lesson (1)

Yes, but remember, when you go down the hill, the bike is going to go faster, so you'll need to use the brakes.

ور مند مدر حه بسكل أسرع، لذلك استخدام الفرامل.

I did it! That was great!

Mazen

Nibi

نفد فعنيها! كان دلت رابعا!

: Be careful! You're now cycling too slowly. You need to go Nabil

faster or the bike will fall over ... Oh, dear, are you OK?

و من المراجد من من من من من من المديد كنت بحاجة للذهاب أسرع أو ستسقط الدراجة ... أن یا عربری، هل انت بخیر؟

Mazen : I fell, but I'm fine.

بقد سقطت، ولكن أنا يخير.

| I'll help you stand up. Nabil

Mazen Thanks! That's an example of a pull force, isn't it? I think I'm

better at science than riding a bike!

هذا بالان على شرة السحب، ليس كذلك؟ أعتقد أنني أفصل في العلوم من ركوب الدراجة!

#### Answer the following questions:

What do you use to get the bike to move?

- What do you use to stop the bike?
- What do you do when you want to increase your speed?

#### Did you know?

The fastest roller coaster callal latter in the world is the ' > ' : '

It can move from 0 to 240 kilometers an hour in 4.9 seconds. You can ride أرمدينه ابوطني) . (مدينه ابوطني).

#### Read and learn.

- A push force makes the bike move.
  - Brakes slow down or stop the wheels.
- To increase your speed, push the pedals more quickly.
- If you cycle too slowly, the bike will fall over.
- When a car goes too fast down a hill, you need to use the brakes.
- The car goes at 60 Km/h. This is the car's speed.

Look and learn.

## Forces

pull



open a door



fly a kite



. out on socks

push



kick a ball



close a laptop



throw a basketball

uals your child read and learn about forces. القوا ويتعلم عن القوم

# general Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

Ger	an the correct		
teten and clieb	se the torrect	answer from a, D,	c, or a.
1 usually get the bus		A	to school.
usually ger are	b) car	c) taxi	d) train
1. a) bus		took me	e to school today.
a j	b) Dad	c) Aunt	d) Uncle
<sup>2</sup> a) Mom		my dad and clo	sed the car door.
	b) helped	c) thanked	d) visited
a) "come time to	talk to my	:	n diamele
4.   had some	b) uncles	c) cousins	d) friends
a) the cor	roct answer fre	m a, b, c, or d,	
(2) Choose the cor	i det ditaite. Itt	, , , , ,	
1. I'm good at riding	a	•	•
1. I'm good a	b) ship	c) bike	d) plane
a) rocket			to school.
2. We can	b) swim	c) cycle	d) bike
a) bicycle 3. We learned about	forces in our		lesson yesterday.
3. We learned about	b) science	c) Arabic	d) music
a) history	y pushing the		•
4. The bike moves b	brokes	c) seats	d) wheels
a) pedals	b) brakes	0)	
5. If you want to stop	o the bike, use u	c) brakes	d) pedals
a) seats	b) wheels	push the per	dals more quickly.
6. If you want to incre	ease the	c) wheel	d) speed
a) distance	b) quantity	c) wilder	that hill.
7. Cycle harder whe	n you go	\ in	d) out
- \ _ = 1 = 1 = 1 = 1	P) 110	<b>6)</b> ""	
8. When you go fast	down a hill, you	Ueed to use the	d) seats
a) wheels	b) pedals	c) brakes	omeone stand up.
9. An example of a	•		d) sleep
a) pull	b) push	c) relax	1 .
10. I'm good at			d) cycled
a) cycle		Clarit	
Help your child deal with such a	None -	ALBAHER - Connect Plu	18 (5) - First Term 173

Help your child deal with such questions.



#### Read the following text and answer the questions.

opened the car door and got in. Dad started the car and when we passed the park, the car was traveling at 40 kilometers an hour. It didn't take long to get to school. I thanked my dad, got out, and closed the car door. I was early, so I had some time to talk to my friends. I like it when Dad takes me to school.

#### A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1. I usually get to school by
  - a) car b
    - b) train
- c) bus
- d) boat
- 2. The underlined words "get to" mean to

at school

· · today

- a) play
- b) run
- c) walk
- d) arrive

- I went to school with
  - a) Mom
    - b) Dad
- c) brother
- d) sister

#### B) Answer the following questions.

- 4. What speed was the car traveling at?
- 5. What did you do when you get to school early?



Write a text of FIFTY (50) words.

Your new bike

**Guiding words:** 

(birthday - my parents - learn how - pedals - brakes )

### LANGUAGE

listen and say.









tires
إطادات

زنبرك

spring

rope حبل



Key vocabulary

triction

tennis ball فوة الاحتكاك

فره تئس

ension

object توة الشد ( يضعط)

00

path فراع / مساحة / قضاء

space airresistance

press مقاومة لهواء

gravity

spring force

alle normal size

scientist

plane

dictionary طاثرة

keyboard

hang لوحة مفاتيح

Defin

tensic of

It is a pull force.

HJ (Un TP

a force that pulls objects toward the Earth

friction

rubbing of one surface against another

air resistance

works against an object as it moves through the air.

spring fo

happens when you press a spring and it gets smaller.

The spring returns to its normal size when you take your

finger off.

### Question tag

السؤال المذيل

It has two parts.

بنكون من جزئين.

(1)

a sentence , question tag?

(2)

Usage;

We use it to check or confirm information.

سنغدم السؤال المذيل للتحقق من المعلومات أو تأكيدها.

Form

The question tag is formed of:

نكان السؤال المذيل من:

helping verb / modal verb + subject pronoun?

فعل ناقص ، فعل مصاعد

ضمير فاعل

Notes

positive sentence , negative tag?

الجملة مثبتة 🖚 السؤال منفي

e.g. You live in Egypt, don't you?

negative sentence, positive tag? السؤال مثبت السؤال مثبت

e.g. Ali didn't go home, did he?

We use a comma before the question tag and a question mark after the question tag.

Lesson (2) |s/are/was/were +-- isn't 'aren's لاحظ الأفعال في حالتي الاثبات والنفي: have thas thad + P.P haven't been lear will / would / can won't evolution .... /couldn't mustice /could / must eg. This bird can fly, cant it? eg. Her call you tomorrow, he? عند عدم وجود فعل مساعد أو ناقص في الجملة: don't حصدر الفعل doesn't v+s, es, ies --didn't التصريف الثاني للفعل eg. They like museums, don't they? eg. She makes tea, doesn't she? e.g. He visited the zoo, didn't he? Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or there? 1. There isn't any coffee in the cupboard, d) have c) are she? b) is a) am She didn't tell me her name, d) weren't c) wasn't send Grandpa an email, won't you? b) didn't a) did d) must c) will 3. You we? b) may a) can d) aren't We can make dinner tonight, c) mustn't be hot tomorrow, will it? b) isn't a) can't aren't c) won't 5. It b) isn't 2) Read and complete with the correct form a) can't he? in Damietta, don't you? 1. Dad will help me with my homework, they? to the sports center, didn't she? 2. You They can speak English, Al-BAHER - Connect Plus (5) - First Term 177 4. Hala

## **General Activities**



## Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box:

didn't - gravity - What - scientist - cook I went to the museum today. Anas ..... was there? Safia talking to some children Anas There was a 21 : What did he talk about? Safia Anas The importance of 3) Safia You understood it, 4) you? Anas Yes, I did. Read and complete the sentences with words from the box; slowly - space - friction - smaller - pull than on the path 1. You can fall on ice because there is less Tension is a ..... force

- 3. Air resistance makes an object move more
- 4. When you press on a spring, it gets
- Gravity keeps people from flying up into

#### (3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- between the bike tires and the road stops you from falling 1.
  - a) Friction
- b) Tension
- c) Gravity
- d) Force
- When you hang a bag on a hook, the bag creates a pull force called
  - a) push
- b) friction
- c) tension
- d) resistance

3.

- works against an object as it moves through the air
- a) Tension
- (b) Gravity
- c) Air resistance
- d) Pull

h muestions.

Lesson (2) happens when you press a spring and it gets smaller. The spring returns to its normal size when you take your finger off.

b) Friction c) Growth a) Tension is a force that pulls objects toward the Earth. a) Airresistance b) Gravity c) Spring force 1) Tension The children visited the science museum today, a) didn't they b) did they c) were they d) had they people can see some interesting things there, ? a) can they b) can't they c) will they d) won't they Their teacher won't give them a lot of homework, 2 b) won't they c) can he d) can't he a) will he The science museum isn't far from the city center, ? b) is it c) does it d) doesn't it a) isn't it 10. Hamdi and his family traveled by boat, didn't b) him c) they d) them a) he Order the words to make correct sentences. 1. won't - tomorrow - It - rain - it - , will - ? 2 does - doesn't - Your - French, - mom - speak - she - ? 3. didn't - chicken, - She - have - she - did - ? Complete the question tags. <sup>1. Mr</sup> Hassan doesn't drive cars, he? 2.1'll be in your class next year, 1? 3. Rania can play the guitar, she? 4. Eman didn't go to the park,

5.1 like English,

she?

. |?

Lesson (3)

## PAPER AIRPLANES

#### Key vocabulary

paper airplane	triangle طائوة ورقية	
dart	top سهم (طائرة ورفية)	-
glider	tip طائرة شراعية	Cople / Lynn
instructions	vertically	(J <sub>ja</sub>
corner	ا وية - ركن flat	No page
faster	farther	المحتاج ا مستو
longer	wing	ماد
		ي اح

#### Conjugation of verbs

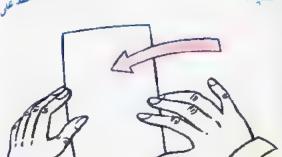
	Present	Past	P.P
take	took باخذ	(	taken
fold	fold بطوی	ed	fo dea
crease	crea بجعد / يضغط لعس بنيه / يثنى	ısed	creased
repeat	repe بکرد	ated	repeated

#### Important expressions and prepositions

a piece of	turn over قطعة من	غلب
ın half	from point to point ف المنتصف	س لفطة إلى نقطة
fold down	make sure ، يعلوى لأسفل	ىناكد
fold over	? How far?	كم المساحة ؟

# Read the instructions. Make a dar paper oil con-

Take a piece of paper and fold in half years 1 / Trease it. خذ قطعة من الورق وأطوها تصفين رأسيًا واضعط عي



Open the paper. Fold over the top two corners.

افتح الورقة. اطو أعلى طرفيها.



Turn the paper over. Fold it in half and crease it.

اقلب الورقة. أطوها لمصفين واصغط على الثنيه.

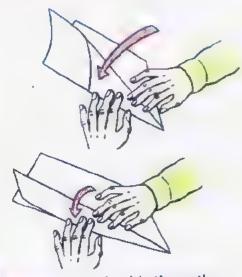


Help your child make a Dart paper airplane.

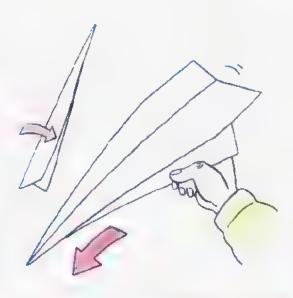
ساعد طفلك أن يصنع طائرة سهم ورقية.

Fold down one wing and crease the top of it. Then fold it down again and crease it again

صواحد اجتحتها واضغط الثليه العلياثم أطوها لأسفل وأضعط على النبية مرة أحرَّ.



Repeat step 4 with the other wing. Your Dart is ready to fly. كرر الحصوة الرابعة مع الجناح الآخر، صابرتك الورقية منهره للطيران



Al-BAHER - Connect Plus (5) - First Term 181

## Read the instructions. Make a Glider paper airplan

## The Gilder

Repeat steps 1 and 2 for the Dart.

كرز الخطوبين ١ و ٢ من صناعة الطائرة الورقية،

Fold over the top triangle, Crease it. اطو المثلث أعلى الورقة ثم اضغط على الثنيه.

Fold the plane in half.

Fold down the wings. Fold

مو الجمعة الاسفل. اطو من جانب إلى الحانب

from one corner to the

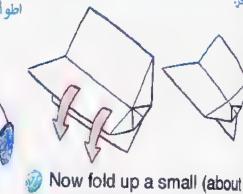
other corner.

المنتصف



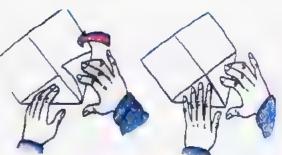
Fold over the top two corners again. Make sure all of the paper is flat.

اطو أعلى الجانبين مرة ثانية. تأكد من أن كل الورق مسطح،



1 cm) piece of the wing. Your Glider is ready to fly!

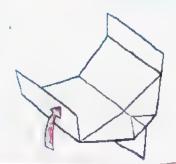
والا اطو أعلى الحدج قطعة تسغ اسم. طادرتك الشراعية جاهرة للطيران،



Fold over the tip from point to point. Crease everything well.

اطو الطرف الإعلى من تقصة أي أحرى، واضغط على كل تبيه بشكل





Help your child make a Dart paper airplane. سند طعت أن يصنع طائرة سهم ورقبة

# general Activities

Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box
wood - Dart - over

What are you doing, Anas?

I'm making a 1) ...... airplane.

How do you make it? Mas

seif

ceit

Anas

self Anas Fold a piece of paper in half 2)

What do you do after that?

the top two corners. Fold down the two wings. Fold 3)

Your 4) . ..... is ready to fly.

## 2) Read and complete the text with words from the box:

tip - top - down - piece - peace

To make a Glider paper airplane, you need to take a 1) of paper and fold it in half vertically. Fold over the 2, two corners. from point to point and crease everything well. the wings. Fold up a small piece of the wing. It's ready now. Fold 4)

Write a text of FIFTY (50) words.

#### A Dart paper airplane

Guiding words:

(paper - vertically - crease - open - Fold - Turn)

## Lesson (4)

## GRANDPA'S SPECIAL SHOES

#### Key vocabulary

astronaut	رايدا فضاد	a trampoline	يرامبولس (جهار للقص)	gravit <sub>v</sub>
special	جانني مهم	a parachute		normal

#### Extra vocabulary

usual	معتاد	leaves	أوراق شجر	stadium
different	محست	fail	فصر لحريف	amazing
ground	ارض	planets	كواكب	pilot
journey	رجنه	space rocket	بياروح فصاء	desert

#### Conjugation of verbs

#### Regular verbs منتطقه

	Present	Past	P.P
look like		looked like بشبه	looked like
reply		replied برد / بجيب	replied
follow		followed یتبع	followed
jump		. jumped یفتر	j <b>ump</b> ed
float		floated بطفو	floated
pour		poured	poured

#### Irregular verbs 🐷

	Present		Past	P.P.
wear		wore برندي		worn
bring		brough يحضر	nt	brought
show		showe ببين / بعرص	d	shown
sit down		sat dov بحس	wn	sat down
hit		hit بضرب		hit
fall		fell بقع		fallen

## Lesson (4) Important expressions and preposit

better than usual

fly over بجانبهم

by their sides

Jest float posthear

a pair of

pefinitions

usual, not different

normal

a force that pulls things to the ground

gravity

somebody who travels into space for a job

astronaut

10UF

a journey when you visit many different places

special

Help Your class.

different from others and better than usual

### listen and read.

### Flying signs

O She has moved her arm to the right, so she will fly to the right.

حاكث ذائف لينهان، لعلم سنصر إلى اليمين،

She has both arms above her head, so she will fly higher.

وقعت دراهيه فوق راسها ، لدلت سوف تعدر لاحل

- She has put her arms down by her sides, so she will lly down again,
- وصحت فراعيها إلى أسفل على جانبيها، لذلك ستهبط مرة أحرى، She has moved her arm to the left, so she will fly to the left.

حردت دراعها لنيسار، لذبك ستطير إلى اليسار،









Listen and read.

### Sin Vale Shows

It was the year 2122 and Hady and Hoda's grandpa was visiting them. Grandpa was an astronaut when he was younger. When he visited them, he always brought something interesting.



كان ذلك عام ٢١٢٧، كان الجد يزور هادى وهدى، كان الجد إند فضاء عندم كى صعب سبب عددما كان بخلب داتما شيئا متيرا،

"Hello Grandpa!" said Hady. "Do you have something to show us?" asked Hoda. "I always bring you something, don't I? Look at these," "They don't look like normal shoes, "said Hady. "You're right," Grandpa replied. "Let's go outside. I'll show you what the shoe can do." he said. He showed the children a pair of shoes. Hoda and Hady followed Grandpa out of the house to a hill. They were very excited. They sat down and Grandpa took three pairs of shoes from a bag.

قال هدى المرحبا إنها العدد. بدالت هدى العد تديد شيء ريد تني بدر بدر حديد تعاديه". اليس كذلك؟ النظوا لى هذه واطهد للأطفال روح من ارحديد فار هدي الدر و مر رحديد بعاديه". أجب الجدد" النت على حق الدعنا ناهب للحرح بدرانك ما رسكان عدد مدر مدر مدر مدي وهدى الجد إلى خارج الممرل ثم الى ثرر كاروا مدديد من ما مسلو وحد المدر من من الأحديث عن الحقيبة.

"Gravity usually pulls things to the ground," said Grandpa."But these are special shoes. When you wear them, gravity does not pull you down. So children, if you could fly, what would you do?"

اله الجديا عادة ما تسحب الجادبية الأشياء إلى الارض". "لكن هذه أحسية خاصه. عندما توتليها، فإن الجاذبيد والسال المالية الأشياء إلى الارض". الكن هذه أحسية خاصه. عندما توتليها، فإن المعلوا؟"

Lesson (4)

"I would fly over the sea," said Hode "I at "Would fly over the sea," said Hoda. "Let's start with a tour of our city," Grandpa said."Put these shoes on. Now, hit your left foot with your right Grander times. One, two, three ... Good. Look! You can fly!"

المنابعة على المنابعة على المنابعة الم رحوره و در در در در در در در در العده الاحتاية الان ، اضرف فدمك اليسرى بقلمل وحد ، منذان ، ثلاثة ... حيد النظر! يمكنك الطيران!"

The children flew up into the air. They could move right or left by moving an arm to that side. If they put both their arms above their head, they flew higher up. If they put their arms down by their sides, they flew down again. Hoda and Hady loved flying. It was an amazing feeling. They could see all the city from up there.

من رحم وي بيور سيمه محد يميد ويسارا عن طريق تحريك ذراع إلى هذا الجانب. اذا وضعوا - بيد ما المسفل مرة برعي درضعو درخهه على حانبهم ، طاروا لاسفل مرة بالية. أحب هادي ه. ها را در العبر العالمية بالادر الدسة مر الإعلى هباك

After ten minutes, Grandpa said, "OK children. Now we need to go down to the ground again." When they were on the ground, Hoda asked, "Why doesn't everybody have shoes like these?" "Because they are only for astronauts!" said Grandpa. "And special people too, like my favorite grandchildren!"

الما المعدد المسامية المال الان على بحاجله إلى النزول إلى الارض مرة اخرى، المن المعلم الله بالمارة المناه من العدميم أحدث من هذاه المحد الانهم فقع يرواد المعبيه: ( \* والاشحاص المميزون أيضاء مثل أحفادي المفضلين! Listen and read.



is what makes things fall to the ground. It is the force that makes leaves fall to the ground in fall and not float above the tree. When this boy jumps on the bed, gravity brings him down and stops him floating up into the . It is also the force that keeps the planets moving around the

ل الجاذبية هي التي نجعل الأشياء تسقط على الأرض، وهي القوة التي تجعل أوراق الشجر تسقط في الخريف لل الأرص ولا تطير أعلى الشجر. وعندما يقفز هذا الولد على السرير تسحبه الجادبية لاسفل وبمنعه من يعمو في انهواء. وهي ايضا القوة التي تجعل الكواكب تدور حول الشمس.

how him!

What would happen if there was no gravity?

Everything would float up into the air.

What makes the parachute go down to the ground?



It's gravity.





Help your child read about gravity.

1					
		MAYIN			
	1)	SACIAN			
	. 31 10				
	and Chuose	rue cotté	it a	nswer from	<b>5.1</b>
	Listen and choose			· · ·	3 - 5 OT
1	showed the	children a	pai	of	
	Grandpa site	socks	c)	boots	*(A - 1
14	- MU62		- 1	33010	d) gloves
	ay don't look into				shoes.
2.	They don't look  a) usual They followed grandp  They followed b)	normal	C)	local	d) unusual
	a) usollowed grandp	a out of the	e ho	use to a	
1	They low b)	hill	c)	club	d) room
Į,	a) hall			****** *d *****	
,	Thay Well	ugly	c)	kind	d) excited
D.					•
	Read and complet	e the text	wit	words from the	e box.
2					
-				er - up - down	
	The children flew 1)				into the air.
	The children flew 1).				
	and move right or i	ett by movi	ny a	in ann io inal sio	e. If they put both
heil	arms above the	n by their 3	)	thev	flew down again.
If the	ey put their arms dow	ii by their o	, .		
Had	a and Hady loved flyll	ng. It was a	li ai	mazing 7)	·
-	y could see all the city	from up th	ere		
The	y could see all are			t camioneos	
2	Order the words t	o make col	rec	( Sentences.	
_					a -
1.	showed - a pair of -	Landpa - C	chile	Leu - Sunea and	•
				•	
2	you something	- to show	- ha	ve -us -?	
٨		Ulamo -	flyir	ng - the - enjoye	d
\$,	abovei no	M - Village -	пуп	'9	
	•		•		
4.	fall - to - the ground	l eaves - i	n fa	MII - 4	
	3.22				

Help your child deal with such questions.

Al-BAHER - Connect Plus (5) - First Term 189



#### Read the following text and answer the questions.

"Gravity usually pulls things to the ground," said Grandpa."But these are special shoes. When you wear them, gravity does not pull you down. So children, if you could fly, what would you do?" "I would fly over the stadium to watch my favorite football team, "Hady said. "I would fly over the sea," said Hoda. "Let's start with a tour of our city," Grandpa said. Put these shoes on. Now, hit your left foot with your right foot three times. One two, three... Good. Look! You can fly!"

#### A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1. Gravity usually

  a) pushes
  b) sells
  c) pulls
  d) buys
  2. The underlined pronoun "them" refers to the
  a) things
  b) shoes
  c) children
  d) cities
- Grandpa's shoes are
  - a) special b) ordinary c) normal d) common
- B) Answer the following questions.
- 4. Why would Hady fly over the stadium?
- 5. What's the main idea of the text?

Jobs

web designer راند فضاء

astronaut

pilot مهندس

engineer

doctor مهندس معماري

architect

school Sufification

science فيزياء

math کیمیاء

physics chemistry

English هندسة معمارية

architecture

Extra

Mars

health كوكب المربخ

acceleration office

skills مهاوت medicine

robot انسان آلی skateboard

#### Conjugation of verbs

#### Regular verbs

	Fresent	. Past	
solve		≈ solve :	solve
affect decide		affect مونوعتي	affect
end		.je decide	decide
<sup>Org</sup> anize	-	end 🖖 ينھي	end
design		organize بنظم	organize
Help your chie		طعم design :	design

-- Unit (4)

Present		

grow up	Lieselli	Past	
leave		🕓 grew up	P.P
give	J	ابغاني left	grown up left
speak	پ	gave بمط	given
meet		spoke	spoken
lmna		met بهابا	met

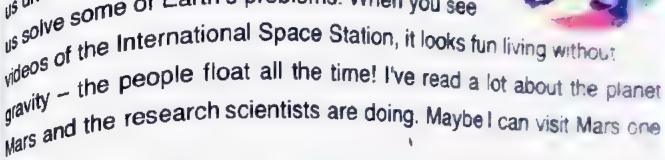
## Important expressions and prepositions

doresearch	ions and	Drenosition	
doresearch			
ao things		close to	
work hard	بقوم بعمل أشباء	get help from	ورب ۱۹۰
the day	يعمل بجد	getajob	معلى مساعده من
across the world	في التهار	work for	يبميل على وظبقة
-	حول العالم	getsick	وسأ راس
work on a project		3 - 1 - 1 <b>- 1 .</b> 1	لأرض
interested n+(noun/v+ing	1)		بينل في مشروع
our own planet	' <i>'</i>		مهتم ب
International Space Station			كوكمنا
The state of tallong			معطة القضاء الدواعة

#### **Definitions**

pilot	a person who flies airplanes
astronaut	a person who works in space
engineer	a person who builds roads and bridges
aircraft = airplane	people can travel through the air on it
architect	a person who designs buildings and roads

Losson (5) -



المهم دراسة الكواكب الأخرى لأيها عندم و لكو كب من المهم دراسة الكواكب الأخرى لأيها عندم نشاهد فيديوهن على المربع عبين هدت حول الجادبة - النياس تطفو طبوال الوقعة القرام عدد عبين هدت حول العلماء. ريما بمكنيي زيارة المربع يوما ما العلماء. ريما بمكنيي زيارة المربع يوما ما العلماء المربع يوما ما المربع يوما ما العلماء المربع ا

My name is Jana. When I grow up, I'd love to be an engineer like my Uncle Wael. His job sounds really interesting. Did you know that people who do this job don't only help to build roads and bridges?

They also help make things such as skateboards!

Uncle Wael says that you need to understand science to do this job
For example, you need to know how friction and different forces affect
how skateboards move.

ب مدن تعدد في دين العدوم الله مساور الله هم يساعدون أنضافراً ب معدد المهمة على سنا المعدد المهمة على سنا

I'm Karim. I decided I wanted to be a pilot when I went to an airplane festival with my mom and dad. We saw lots of different planes flying in the sky, and some of them did amazing moves, flying close to the ground, and then flying around in a circle.

- Unit (4)

The planes flew in groups, sometimes with their wings very close together It looked amazing. There was also a small museum, and I learned how air resistance helps the planes to stay in the air!

. لاكريم، قررت أنني أريد أن أصبح طيارا عندما ذهبت إلى مهرجان للطائرات مع أي وأي. رايف الكثير من المائرات المختلفة تحلق في السماء ، وبعضها قام بحركات مذهلة ، وحلقت بالقرب من الأرض ، ثم حنقت إن الله علقت الطائرات في مجموعات ، وأحيانا تكون اجنعتها قريبة جدا من بعضها المعض بدا الامر المعلا. كان هناك أيضا متحف صغير ، وتعلمت كيف تساعد مفاومة الهوء الطابرات على البقاء في الهواء؛

#### Read the article about Sherif.

Meet Sherif, 24, from Cairo. He's an engineer who has started his own company.

تعرف على شريف، ٢٤ عاما، من القاهرة. إنه مهندس والذي بدا شركته الخاصة.

Sherif wanted to be an engineer when he was 10 years old. He always watched TV programs about robots, and he loved making things.



: شريف أن يكون مهندسا عندما كان عمره عشر سنوات. كان دائما يشاهد البراميج التلفزيونية عن وبونات ، وكان يحب صنع الأشياء,

When he was 13, he started helping a robot design company online. He did his school work in the day and in the evening he worked on his robot projects. This experience helped him to start his own company.

ها كان عمره ثلاثة عشر عاما ، بدأ في مساعدة شركه تصميم رودون عبر الإنترنت، قِبْلُم بعمله المدرسي في اروي المساء كان بعمل في مشارب عالروبوت الحاصة به ساعدته هذه التجربة على بدء شركته الخاصة.

that the science and math lessons at school helped him to learn to said that the problems. He also found English very useful as the solve problems. that the problems. He also found English very useful as it helps him to solve problems the world. He is now learning to with people across the world. He is now learning to with people across the world. to solve people across the world. He is now learning Japanese so he with people in Japan.

an talk to people in Japan. يوم والرماصيات في سعر مدة بعالم مع الماس في جميع أنحاء العالم، وهو الان يتعلم الله

For me, a job is about doing things which help other people around the

ر ، بوصف في ما ينعنق بفعل الاشياء التي تساعد الآخرين في جميع أنحاء العالم". world," he says.

## Ask and answer.

What job do you want to do when you are a der



I want to be a doctor because I want to help people who are sich.

I want to be an architect because I want to design new buildings.



On Earth, growity pushes our bones together There is no gravity in space, so some bones move apart. So astronauts who spend six months on the International Space Station can grow 3% taller! (They return to their usual size back on Earth.)





## **General Activities**

ب لنكا غولها با ولعد<sub>اا</sub>

				U.
	1 Listen and	theose the corre	ct answer from a,	o, c, ord.
1	Sherif wanted	to be a/an	****** *** *************	•
		b) engineer		d) vet
2	He always water			
	a) animals	b) sports	c) robots	d) birds
3.	He loved			***** *****
	a) buying	b) selling	c) making	d) playing
4.	When he was	, he started h	nelping a robot desig	n company one
	a) ten	b) eleven	c) twelve	d) thirteen
			rom a, b, c, or d.	
1.	I want to be a/an	because I	'm interested in the st	ars and the plan
	a) pilot	b) doctor	c) engineer	d) astronau
2.	When there's no	gravity, people		all the time
	a) float	b) caught	c) bought	d) boat
3.			elp make things suc	
	a) Teachers	b) Engineers	c) Pilots	d) Astronauts
4.			to learn .	
	a) Arabic	b) music	c) science	d) Japanese
5.	I decided to be a	/an	when I went to a	n airplane festiva
	a) astronaut	b) engineer	c) pilot	d) architect
6.			helps the plane	s to stay in the ar
_	a) Gravity	b) Friction	c) Air resistance	d) Floating
(3)	Order the wor	ds to make cor	rect sentences.	
1	skills - She - com			
••	Skills Olic - Will	ipaler - good - n	ao s	
2.	new - buildings -	An architect - c	tesians -	
3. (	ean - We - on - tra		Se .	

Read the following text and answer the questions.

wants to be a pilot. She was sara wants to be a pilot. She wants an exciting job. She enjoys gara walls an exciting job. She enjoys and she likes visiting new places. She would like to work as aveling aream. Her friend Dalia wants to be a doctor. aveling and Her friend Dalia wants to be a doctor. She's interested in and why people get sick. She likes work as of a tealth and why people get sick. She likes working with people thinks she'd like to work in medicine. people's thinks she'd like to work in medicine.

choose the correct answer from a, b, cor d.

sara wants to be a/an

b) engineer c) pilot a) doctor palia is interested in people's ......

b) stories c) health

a) money The underlined pronoun "She" refers to

b) Mona c) Dalia a) Sara

3) Answer the following questions.

, What does Sara enjoy doing?

; Who does Dalia like working with?

Write a text of FIFTY (50) words.

Your future job

**Guiding words:** 

(science - engineer - buildings - bridges - skateboards)

d) astronaut

d) education

d) Noha

Lesson (6)

### WRITING AN EMAIL

### How to write an email

كيف تكتب بريدًا الكترونيًا



Remember, when you write an email to a friend, you can Remember, when you write an write how you would speak use informal language. You can write how you would speak to them, and start and end in a friendly way. For example:

- Start the email with Hi! or Hello! and How are you?
- Say what you want to do and why.
- ◆ Use sequencing words: First, then, and finally to order the information.
- Write two or three paragraphs.
- End with Bye for now! or See you soon!

#### Read the email.



From : Maged To : Asser

Subject : A job in the future

HI Asser.

Are you enjoying the weekend at your grandparents?

You asked me what job! want to do in the future and I've decided now.

I want to be a scientist and study space. I'm really interested in space and

I want to understand it better. There's still so much that we don't know.

I talked to my parents about what I need to do. This is what they said:

First, I need to do well at school, especially in science.

فرنستمتع بعطله نهاية الأسبوع عند جدادك؟ لقد سالتني عن الوطيفة التي أريد القيام بها في المستقبل أِفْرَرَتَ الاِنْ. أَرِيدَ أَنَ أَكُونَ عَالِما وأُدْرِسِ الفضاء، أنامهتم حقا بالفضاء وأربد أن افهمه بشكل أفضل، لا يزال سك الكثير الذي لا نعرف. تحدثت إن والذي حول ما يجب أن أفعله. هذا ما قالوه: أولا ، أنا بحاجة إلى القيام بعمل جيد في المدرسة ، وخاصة في مجنان العلوم.

Lesson (6) need to go to university and study subjects like chemistry, math, and no you know what physics is? It's all about encountered need know what physics is? It's all about energy, space, and time no you want to study the stars and planets الكيمياء والرياضيان والعيرساء والأعيرساء والمعيرساء وا

بعد دنية ، محتاج إنى الدهاب إلى الحامعة ودراسة مواد مثل الكيميا، والرياضيان والفيرياء. هل تعرفر بعد دلث ، حتاج إلى الدهان إلى الحامب و ر . \* من مدر حامل كما بمنسؤ دلط في والفصاء والوقت، لـذا فها و مفيند إذا كنيت ترغب في دراسة العجو

Ineed to find a job at a place where people study space, like a Then I can work on projects and learn from other scientists. What 100 you know what job you want to do in the future? Bye for now!

حبر ، حدج إن عثور عنى وظيفة في مكان يدرس فيه الناس الفضاء ، مثل الجامعة. ثم يمكنني العمل على المشارب Maged والتعلم من عيم، أحرين، ما رأيك؟ هل تعرف لوظيفة التي تريد القيام بها في المستقيل،؟

وداعا الآراة

#### Inswer the following questions.

- 1, Does Maged want to go into space in the future?
- 2. What will he do when he leaves school?
- 3. What is the most important school subject for him?

## General Activities

Write an email of FIFTY (50) words.

to your friend Omar telling him about your future job.

**Guiding words:** 

doctor - biology - science - hospital - sick

From

To

Subject:

2 Complete the email with words from the box.

Bye for now - Finally - First - Hello - How are you - Then

Bye for field
From :Reem
To :Sherifa
Subject: Future Job Sherifa.
? Are you having fun on vacation?
the future and live decided what I want to do. I want to
the analysis and docum huldings. I'm really interested in designing
buildings with renewable resources. I think we need to design better
buildings in the future.
I talked to my teachers about what I need to do.  I need to work hard at school, especially in subjects like math,
I need to go to university and side,
At university I'll learn how to design lots of different buildings.
. Heed to move it
as an architect. I want to work with people who design apartments to live in.  I'm not interested in designing big hotels or offices. What do you think?
Do you know what job you want to do in the future?
6)
Reem

ook and say.

## Extra vocabulary

tower ارض tower ارض builder ارض builder ارض builder المان inventor المنهور mous مشهور water clock والمانة وال

land

ا frightened برح nervous عمر بدا معرود patient مخترع معترع معالية surprised منكة مانية worried مرتك/مشوش

## Conjugation of verbs

felds

	Past	P.P	Prese	ent	Past	P.P
aigh	landed laughed climbed	landed laughed climbed	invent include hurt		nvented ncluded nurt	invento include hurt

#### Important expressions and prepositions

walk through	يمشي عبر	made of	-	مصدوع من
find out	يكتشف	run back down	لأسقن	بحري عند

#### **Definitions**

feathers	soft things that cover a bird	ربستى
land	move down until something is on the ground	-
Invent	make or design something for the first time	بخنرة
builder	a person who builds houses, schools, etc.	عامل بدء
<sup>inve</sup> ntor	a person who makes or designs new things	محرع

Histo your child identify these words.

#### Listen and Read.

Ali was ten years old and he lived in the 9th century. He worked on his father's farm. Every day that summer, he saw a man walk through the fields towards a tower. The man was old but looked strong. One day, Ali decided to talk to the man.

مغ علي عشر سلوات من العمر وعاش في القرن الناسع. كان يعمل في مزرعة والده. كل يوم في دلت الصيف م بري وجلا يمشي عبر الحقول بانحاد برج كان الرحل كبير في سب الاستاسات في حد لادم على المحدد في الحقول بانحاد برج كان الرحل عبير المحدد في المحد

سله على "عقواه إلى أين أنت ذهب؟". اجاب سرحل أن عمل في تبرح شبيم سبه على تقر بب عمل ــــ " "

The man laughed."No, I'm an inventor. I'm 65 but I don't want to stop working. There are always new things to find out!"

ضعك الرجل وقال "لا ، ال مخترع. أذ عمرى 65 عم كسي لا رب سوست با معمر هدالت بد سد ، سمد الاكتشافها!"

ساله على "له الذي تعمل علم الأن؟ " قال الرجل الحاد معرب مدر مدر مدر مدر مدر مدر المدر المدر المدر المدر المدر ا أو ليوم التالي ، قرر على أن ينبعه وكان بحمل شيئا. ساله علي "ماذا تحمل؟".

الله ورحل الفيد المستحدين ولالمامية موعاد من المستب والدينر السالة لدي السياسية المستجدة المستبدية المستعدية المستعددة المستع

<sup>&</sup>quot;Excuse me, where are you going?" All asked.

<sup>&</sup>quot;I'm working at the old tower." the man answered.

<sup>&</sup>quot;Are you a builder?" Ali asked.

<sup>&</sup>quot;What are you working on now?" asked Ali.

<sup>&</sup>quot;I'm trying to find out how to fly like a bird." the man said, and walked away.

The next day, Ali decided to follow. He was carrying something.

<sup>&</sup>quot;What are you carrying?" asked Ali.

<sup>&</sup>quot;These are my wings They are made of wood and feathers" he said

<sup>&</sup>quot;Are you going to use them to fly?" asked Ali.

<sup>&</sup>quot; Well, why don't you come with me? Then we'll know, won't we?" he said

Lesson (7)

mey walked to the tower and climbed to the top. All watched as the man they wall was amazed because the man flowed as the man put on the jumped from the pwerl Ali was amazed because the man flew slowly to the ground! He pwerl and him land. did not see him land.

الرجل "حسنا، ها اناذر حدجيه قال الرجل "حسنا، ها اناذار" ا من الترج المنجش على لان الوحل طار بنط عملي لارض الم يرة وهو يهبط

Ali ran back down the tower and soon found the man. He was sitting in the ground. He looked unhappy.

"Are you ok?" said Ali.

"No! That hurt!" he said.

"But you flew! I saw you!" said Ali.

نعي من أن اسهر برج وسرعان ما وجد الرجل. كان جالسا على الأرض، بداغم سعيد ال سانه على "هل التابخير؟"قال الرحل. "را هدامولم!"قال على "لكنك طرت! وأبتك!"

"I flew but I did not land correctly," said the man. "I need to study birds better to find out how they land without hurting themselves."

. - المال المال المال كيف بهيطون بدون بذاء

Ali later found out that the man called Abbas Ibn Firnas. He was an important person who invented many things, including water clocks.

ي معرب المحمد والمحمد والعلم المحمد والمحمد وا

But Ali did not know that in the future. Abbas Ibn Firnas became very famous because he was probably the first person ever to fly using wings.

ميد راع فا دار و المستقبل أصبح عباس س فرناس منهم و احدا لأنه ومما كان أول

## General Activities

ب لعاية الكتاب

1	Listen and c	hoose the corre	ct answer from	n a, b, c, or d
1.	Ali is			*
2.	a) 8 Ali lives in the	b) 9	c) 10	d) 11
		b) century	c) month	d) year
		b) glass	c) plastic	and feathers
	a) third	b) second	*	d) first
~	Choose the	correct answer f	rom a, b, c, or	d,
	We got a/an  a) doctor	b) builder	c) pilot	to build our house,
3.	Abbas Ibn Fim.  a) invented To	b) wrote	c) read	many useful inventions d) spoke
	a) hand Birds have	b) land	c) band	ething is on the ground d) run
	a) feathers NAn	b) meat	c) skin	all over their bodies.  d) bones
	a) inventor	b) artist	c) doctor	•
3	Order the w	ords to make co	rrect sentence	s.
1.	was - Abbas -	inventor - Firnas	- an - Ibn - ,	
2.	used - wings -	- two - fly - to	- birds - like .	
3.	water - He - clo	cks - invented -		

#### Lesson (7)

## Read the following text and answer the questions

Abbas Ibn Firnas was an important person who invented many things, including water clocks. He was very but he worked hard. He didn't want to stop working because of his age. He was the first person ever to fly using wings. So he became very famous.

A Choose	Alexa	correct	ancwer	from	 or
Choose	tue	Correct	allawci	11 0111	

- 1. Clocks tell us the
  - a) time
- b) place
- c) weather
- d) action
- 2. Ibn Firnas became famous because he was the first man to
  - a) read
- b) write
- c) draw
- d) fly
- 3. The underlined word "old" here is the opposite of
  - a) big
- b) small
- c) young
- a) new

- B) Answer the following questions.
- 4. What was Abbas Ibn Fimas?
- 5. Did he stop working when he became old?
- (5) Write a text of FIFT. (50) words.

#### Abbas Ibn Firnas

#### **Guiding words:**

(inventor - 9th century - fly - feathers - famous)

## Writing Corner

### My new bike

Last week my grandpa bought me a new bike. It was a present for my birthday. It has two wheels, pedals and brakes. To make it move I have to push the pedals. It moves with push force. When I want to slow it down or stop it, I use the brakes. To move it faster, I push the pedills quickly. I like riding my new bike very much.

### A dart paper airplane

To make a dart paper airplane, take a piece of paper and fold in half vertically. Crease it. Then open the paper. Fold over the top two corners. After that, turn the paper over. Fold it in half and crease the top of it. Then fold it down again and crease it again. Finally your dart is ready to fly!

From

Safia

To

: Anas

Subject

: A famous person

How are you? I hope you are fine. I want to tell you about a famous person I read about. His name is Abbas Ibn Firnas. He was an inventor. He invented many things like the water clocks. He was the first man to fly.

He used wings made of wood and feathers.

Bye for now!

Safia

From

: Seif

To

: Amira

Subject

: My future job

How are you? I want to tell you about the job I'd like to do in the future. I want to be an astronaut. I like reading about stars and planets very

much. I like watching the stars. In space there's no gravity.

I'll float in space. What about you?

See you soon.

Self

Helo your child write a paragraph.

## Review on Unity

#### FOTCE

	دراجة	friction	حسكان
bike	فرمل	gravity	العلابية والارصية
brake		hook	حطاف
wheel			ربيرك
speed		spring	حن
push force	فوة الدفع		بحلر (العجمة)
null force	قوة السحب	tire/tyre	( , , ),

#### School Subjects

to the control	فيزياء	science	1900
physics			مادة الرياضيات
chemistry	كيمياء	math	2 - 1 - 30 50.19
	هندسة معمارية	English	النعة الإنجليزية
architecture		-	

#### Jobs

	رائد فضاء	web designer	
astronaut			طير
engineer	مهتلس	pilot	الشبيب المستحدث
	مهتلس معماري	doctor	¥ #
architect	•		
builder	حامل بناء		

#### Paper airpland

5.4	crease	على النبية	
Dart	vertically طائرة شراعية		وأسبا
Glider		** .* *	جناح
tip	wing طرف	* *	

### Question tag

السؤال المذيل

It has two parts.

بنكون من جزئين.

a sentence, question tag?

### Usage

We use it to check or confirm information.

ستغدم السؤال المذيل للتحقق من المعلومات أو تأكيدها.

#### Form.

The question tag is formed of:

بنكون السؤال المذيل من:

helping verb / modal verb + subject pronoun?

فعل مساعد

فعل ثاقص

ضمير فاعل

#### Notes

- positive sentence, negative tag?
  - e.g. You live in Egypt, don't you?
- negative sentence, positive tag?
- e.g. Ali didn't go home, did he?
- We use a comma before the question tag.
- e.g. He has played football, hasn't he?

## pictation on Unit (4)

Lesson (1)

دوم 4/ يدال

Lesson (2)

Lesson (3)

عاده من ما داد المرة

1. T. T.

, ·

أهليا / علوي

Lesson (4)

\_-2

٠ د ١ (حه) لمعا)

Lesson (5)

الد وصاء

Lesson (7)

## **Activities On Unit (4)**

المتاع في نهاية الكتاب.

d) Aunt

## Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I usually get the .... to school a) train c) bus b) metro d) car 2. I opened the car and got in a) window b) door c) balcony d) tire The car was traveling at 40 kilometers a/an a) second b) minute c) hour d) week I like it when takes me to school a) Dad

b) Mom c) Uncle

Read and complete the text with words from the box:

own - making - programs - company - doctor

Shaimaa wanted to be an engineer when she was 7 years old. She watched TV 1) about robots, and she loved 2) things. When she was 11, she started helping a robot design 3) online. Shaimaa is 24. She has started her

### Read the following text and answer the questions.

Abbas Ibn Firnas was an inventor. A long time ago, he invented many things, including water clocks. He also made some wings from wood and feathers. He then jumped from a tower and flew to the ground, but he didn't land well. Today, he is very famous because he was probably the first person ever to fly using wings.

## Activities On Unit (4)

## Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1. Abbas Ibn Firnas was a/an
  - a) pilot
- b) astronaut c) inventor d) engineer

and feathers.

- 2. He invented water
  - a) books
- b) clocks
- c) locks
- d) socks

- 3. He made some wings from
  - a) wool

A

- b) stone
- c) sand
- d) wood

- Answer the following questions.
- Where did he jump from?
- i. Why is he famous today?



#### Read and write T (True) or F (False).

- The crocodile is a dangerous animal.
- 2. Gazelles can climb steep mountains.
- 3. Jubari looked for Donga.
- 4. The beach was too sandy.

#### Complete the following sentences: B

- 1. Jubari lived in Wadi
- 2. There were

trees in the desert.

## 5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1.	There is less friction	on when you walk	011	a carpet man	on ice, the
	a) is	b) isn't	31	has	d) hasny (nere)
2.	You live in Tharwa	it Street,			····. Va.
	a) do	k/ j			d) aren't
3.	My sister will be 10	years old next me	onth	1,	ch.,
		b) will	c)	won't	d) doesn't she
4	Your mom			make lovely	cakes, can't she
	a) can	b) may	c)	will	d) must
5.	I have never been	to France,		(o(lb)dina no estitiorizabio	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
	a) have	b) haven't	6)	do	d) don't
6.	Ali	groomed to my requiredness gardenbers			go home, did he
	a) don't	b) doesn't	c)	didn't	d) isn't

#### 6 Order the words to make correct sentences

- 1. use You force jump a push to .
- 2. speed over Without fall will bike the you
- 3 interested planets | am stars in and .



Gravity

**Guiding words:** 

(pull - ground - down - float)

## مر الاستداع و بهابه الكتاب (2) On Review (2)

## D Levels and choose the correct answer from a b, c or d

- An oasis is a place in the .... which has lots of natural resources. c) zoo d bank o) desert a) park people have lived in these oases for of years b) hundreds (2) thousands (d) tens a) millions is very important to grow crops. di Mining
  - Industry (b) Agriculture (c) Sport
- People can grow lots of different fruits and
- d) wheat c) rice a) vegetables b) cotton 2) lizad and complete the dialog with words from the box

## job - engineer - factory - luck - doctor

What would you like to do in the future? Mona

: I'd like to be an 1) Soha

 Why do you like this 2) Mona

It's fantastic and I like maths. Soha

Where will you work? Mona

: In a 3) Soha

: I wish you good 4) Mona

Thanks a lot. Soha

## 3) Kead the forlowing text and answer the questions.

Abbas Ibn Firnas invented many things. One of his inventions was a form of water clock called Al-Maqata. When he lived in the ninth century. there were no watches or phones! People looked at the sun, moon, and stars to tell the time, but this didn't work inside buildings or on cloudy days. So, Abbas Ibn Firnas invented a different kind of clock. It didn't use the sun, moon, or stars - it used another natural resource - water!

#### A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1. Abbas Ibn Firnas invented a clock that used
  - a) milk
- b) water c) tea
- d) honey

2. In the

century, there were no watches or phones

- a) 18<sup>th</sup>
- b) 17<sup>th</sup>
- c) 9th
- q) 50m

The word century means one

**Years** d) million

- a) decade
- b) hundred c) thousand
- B) Answer the following questions.
- 4. What does the underlined pronoun "he" refer to?
- 5. What was the name of the water clock?



#### Read and write I (True) or F (False).

- Wadi El Gemal was a perfect place for gazelles.
- 2. The crocodile was dangerous.
- 3. Jubari found wadi of the gazelles.
- Jubari wasn't brave.

#### Complete the following sentences:

1. Subira taught Jubari to

if he met a dangerous anima

2. The

offered Jubari some seagrast

#### Review (2)

## Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d

					THORICY, III	0 17 10	2) 2	
			has	0)	had	J1	having	-17
	She is very happy,							she
2.	a) is	<b>b</b> )	was	c)	has	11	isn't	
			to an o	2126	, we would se	e pla	ants and	trees
3.	If we							
	a) go		goes	c)	went		going	d
A	They like museum	S,			1 7 76 4 51 4 65		***** 44 17	tney:
	a) do	b)	don't		doesn't		are	4
5.	She said she						like	pizza.

- b) didn't c) won't a) isn't 6. Fares said he usually

  - a) goes b) will go c) is going
- d) went

to the sports center

d) hasn't

money he'll buy a new Dike.

#### (6) Order the words to make correct sentences.

- 1. pedals Without will the fall bike over using you the .
- 2. a rough has A glass texture window -
- 3. as used They honey a medicine .
- 7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words.

#### A job you'd like to do

#### Guiding words:

(grow up - would - architect - houses - buildings)

## Activities (2) On Review (2)

بالتكاا غيلها يا ولعساس

(1	Listen and cho	ese the coneci	answer hom a,			
1.			was another ve	ery im	Portant -	
	a) Copper	c) Gold	e) Silver	uj	Iron Inelal	
2.	It was easy to	er yes be tone . Alone it 4	**************************************		Copper	
	a) break	b) bend	c) heat	u.j	poil	
3.	People used it to r	nake			STARS TORNEY	
	a) spoons	bowls	c) tools	uj	forks	
4	We can see a lot of these objects in museu					
	a) Spanish	b) English	c) French	u)	Egyptian	
2 Read and complete the text with words from the box:						

#### fertile - Egypt - Agriculture - crops in tun.

Did you know that ancient Egypt was very successful because it had good natural resources? 1)

was a very important part of the economy of ancient 2)

The Nile flooded every year and made the soil 3)

Farmers grew lots of different 4)..., such as cotton and rice.

### 3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

My class has just come back from our school visit to Wadi el Gemal. We learned a lot about the ecosystem there. It's very hot and dry, but dorcas gazelles can live there. In summer drey eat daffodils. They also eat the leaves of the acacia trees, which give them food and enough water. So, dorcas gazelles never need to drink. The gazelles eat the acacia seeds and take them to new places. Then more acacia trees grow. So, gazelles are an important part of the ecosystem.

#### Review (2) -

## A) Chouse the punettanswer from a, b, c or d.

- My class has just come back from our school
  - a) club
- b) visit
- c) lab
- 2. It isn't .. ......
  - a) cold
- b) hot
- c) sunny
- 3. The underlined word "they" refers to
  - a) schools
- b) camels c) classes

- to Wadi el Gemal.
- a) library
- in Wadi el Gemal.
- a) heat
- a) gazelles

- B) Answer the following questions.
- 4. Why don't gazelles need to drink?
- 6. What do gazelles eat?

#### The Reader

#### Read and write T (True) or F (False).

- Jubari was a brave gazelle.
- Jubari met a furtle on the beach.
- Donga eats vegetables.
- +. Subira is Jubari's sister.
- complete the following sentences.

2. Jubari met an

Nasser is man-made.

in Gebel Elba.

### 5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1.	If we		to an oasis, we would see plants and trees  b) went  c) goes  d) will as						
		go	b)	went	c)	goes	d)	will go	trees
2.	Fares said he							ride	
		will	_	can	c)	could	d)	cant	a bike
3	They like museums.								44
		are	b)	arent	c)	do	d)		they?
4.	1					. be	eans if Hi	ved on a	3 6 <sub>m</sub>
		grows	5)	would grow	c)	grow	u)	AAIII OLDI	Me
5	The	y said they					going to	buy a i	in Inua
		was		has	c)	were	d)	had	10026
6.	The sky is going to rain,								
	a)	isn't	b)	is	c)	has	d)	hasn't	··· ([])

- 6 Order the words to make correct sentences.
- 1. friends . . . . . . . with played football his .
- 2. into space stops Grandy people flying up .
- 3. you would ... at you do if had money a lot of -?
  - 7 Write a text of STATE (S6) words.

Salt

#### Guiding words:

( important - resource - sold - keep food - fresh - useful - lakes )

# FICTION READER: JUBARIJSEARCHES FOR HOME

ج جوباري يبحث عن موطن



BY JENNIFER FARMER

# The Story JUBARI SEARCHES FOR HOME

# Characters



Jubari (son)



Subira (mother)



dugong



turtle



**Ibex** 



crocodile

# The Places



Wadiel Gemal



Ras Hankorab



Gebel Elba



The Red Sea mangrove



Lake Nasser

# The plot مبكة القمة

Jubari was a brave young dorcas gazelle. He was born in Wadi el Gernal. He left home to look for the "Wadi of the Gazelles". He went to lots of places and met many different animals. Jubari returned home because it is the best place to live in.

كان حودوى عنا العمل شخاعا وادمه، أواس الدمالية أمان المطن المحال وأحق الفرالية ذهن و والمعالية والمعالمة 
# What is the moral of the story?

عا الدرسي المبيد - يع ــــــ

. Animals are happier in the ecosystem they are born in.

تعبش لحيوانات أسعد غم التناة الأمروات بم

# Picture Dictionary



An acacia tree is a species of tree which grows in hot dry places.



Daffodils are species of yellow flower which grow from bulbs.



If you are brave, you are not afraid of dangerous or difficult situations.



A hoof is the hard foot of an animal. For example, horses, goats, and cows have hooves.

#### Nubian ibex

المامز النويس



The Nubian ibex is a species of goat which lives in the mountains of northern Africa and the Middle East.

#### salty

طعام مملح



Food with a lot of salt in it tastes salty.

#### seagrass

اعشاب بحربة



Seagrass is a species of plant which grows under the sea.

steep منحد



A steep hill goes up or down very quickly, and so it is difficult to climb.

# the beginning

Jubari the dorcas gazelle was born in Wadi el Gemal in Egypt's Eastern desert. For the first year of his life, Jubari followed his mother, Subira. She showed him



which plants to eat and where to rest on hot days.

ولد شول الصحر . حماري في مادي تحمال في تصحر - السرفية للمصر ، وفي أول عام من حياله، رافق "حمدري المه سوييرا" واوضحت له اي النباتات بأكلها وابن يرتاح في الأيام الحارة

Jubari was very brave. He wanted to go everywhere and play with all the animals. However, Subira taught him which animals were dangerous and how to stay away from predators. He learned to run away very quickly.



عن حياري سحاعا حدا م د أن با هب إلى مكان النفس مع حميع الحيو ثات. ومع ذلك، علمته سوبيرا أي الحيواثات خطيرة وكيف يبقى بعيدا عن الميواثات المفترسة. وتعلم أن يهرب بسرعة جذ



One day, Jubari and Subira were looking for food. Jubari asked his mother, "Mom, what is this place called?"

Subira answered, "This is Wadi el Gemal, son. It means "Wadi of the Camels."

"Why do we live in the Wadi of the Camels?" Jubari said. "We are gazelles."

Subira laughed. "It's only a name, son. Many animals live here. Wadiel Gemal is the perfect place for gazelles."

دني أحد الرئيام كان "جوباري" و "سوبيرا" يبحثان عن الطعام، وسأل جوداري أمه قائلًا: " أميء ماذا يسمي هذا المكان؟" فرنت سوبيرا قائلة: "إنه وادي الجمال با بي، وهذي يعني "وادى به جمال".

لل جوباري؛ "ولم نعيش في وادي الجمال؟ معن غزلان"، ضحكت سوييرا وقالت "إنه مجرد اسم يا بني، فالعديد من العيوانات تعيش هنا. وادي الجمال مكان مثالي للغزلان".





"Why?" Jubari said. "Well," said his mother. "There are special plants here. First, there's our favorite food, the desert daffodil! And there is also the acacia tree. Their leaves give us food and water all year round, so we never need to drink. And the acacia trees need us, too."

"Why do they need us?" Jubari said.

"We eat their seeds and take them to new places. Then more acacia trees grow."

در حدد در در در در در محد سال عدد در در در دود طعامنا المفصل. إنها رهور الترجس الصحراوية! كما موجد سعد مستد در در سعده در ما دعل مدار لعام لذلك لا تحتاج ابدًا لأن نشرب، وكذلك فإن أشجار السنط؟" قالت الأم: "نحن نأكل بذورها وننقل هذه البذور لاماكن حرى وجد سعو حريد من اشجار السنط.".

"I understand," said Jubari.

"But is there a place called 'Wadi of the Gazelles'?"

"I don't know," said his mother.

"I am going to look for it," said Jubari.

"OK," said his mother." But remember all the things I have taught you and come back soon!"

في حدد ي: القد فهمت، ولكن هن بوج عكان بسمى وادى تعريان؟ قالت امنه "آن لا أغرف" قال حوباري "سابحث عن ذلك المكان"، قالت أمه، حسنا، لكن تذكر كل الاشياء التي علمتُك إياها وعد سريعا".





# Read and write T(True) or F(Faise).

- Jubari was born in Wadi el Gemal.
- 2. Jubari and Subira were looking for food.
- 3. Subira taught Jubari which animals were dangerous.
- 4. Wadi el Gemal isn't the perfect place for gazelles.
- 5. The acacia trees leaves give gazelles food and water.
- 6. Acacia trees don't need gazelles.

#### 2 Read and complete the sentences.

- Jubari was born in
- When Jubari was young, Subira taught him which
- 3. Subira showed Jubari where to rest on
- 4. Jubari and Subira's favorite food was
- 5. They got er high water from

### 3 Answer the following questions.

- 1. What did Jubari the gazelle learn from his mother?
- 2. What does Wadi el Gemal mean in English?
- 3. What do Jubari and his mother eat in the Wadi?
- 4. What do Jubari and his mother drink in the Wadi?
- 5. How do gazelles help the acacia trees?
- Why does Juban leave the Wadi?

to eat. days.

# the middle

Jubari decided to go east. He was excited, so he ran very quickly. 500n, he saw some new kinds of trees. He walked into the trees and stopped. His hooves were under water! Jubari was thirty, so



The water was very, very salty. Then he heard a voice. "You can't drink that water! It's sea water."

ب در در ومشي س الد القد كان لما،

Jubari looked and saw a big white animal in the water. It was looking at him. "I'm Donga, I'm a dugong, I live here in the mangrove forest by the Red Sea." "I'm thirsty," said Jubari.



"Would you like some of my -=> ?" said Donga.

Jubari tried the seagrass, but it was very salty, too. "Thank you," he said." But the mangrove forest is too salty for me! Do you know where I can find the "Wadi of the Gazelles"?"

"I'm sorry." said Donga. "I don't know."

معصر المعد فال العدد إلى الماحيوان الأطوم وأما اعتش هما قال جوباري "أنّا عطشان"، قال دونجا " أبود بعضا من غشبي البعري؟" مد مده مده مده معا حدا الصا بالنسبة لي، وقال ١٠٠٠ الك غاله المنحروف مالحة جدا ي وبحا " أسف، أنَّا لا أعرف.

م ف اس حدوادي العرلا

Next, Jubari ran north. He ran and ran, soon he came to a place where the ground was white, and very soft. He walked slowly. His hooves were going into the ground.

Then he heard a voice.

"Please don't walk here. My eggs are in the sand."



Jubari looked. It was a brown turtle.

"I'm sorry," said Jubari.

"What is this place?"

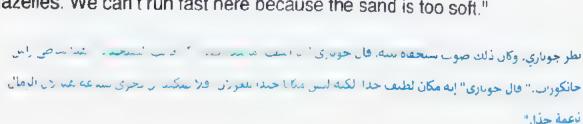
"It's my home," said the turtle.

'Ras Hankorab beach."

"It's very nice," said Jubarı.

"But it's not a good place for

gazelles. We can't run fast here because the sand is too soft."





# ARIST CHES FOR HOME.

Jubari decided to go south. He ran and ran. He came to some mountains.
"I might see the 'Wadi of Gazelles' from the top," he thought.
Jubari climbed the biggest mountain.
It was very seep. His legs became very tired.



ت حويري ل بنعه سعبوت وحرى وحرى حتى وصل إلى بعض الجبال واعتقد أنه ريما يرى وادي العزلان من على عمة. تسلق جوياري أكبر جبل وكان شديد الانعدار، وأصاب سيقائه الإرهاق الشديد.

Then he saw an animal,

a Nution for .

Jubari said,"Hello! Have you been to the top of this mountain?" "Yes," said the ibex. "This is Gebel Elba. It's my home."



"It's too steep for my legs,"said Jubari. "Can you see the 'Wadi of the Gazelles' from the top?"

"I don't know that place " said the ibex "But I can see a very big lake to the west!"

مع حراب الدول قال جوادي "ماحدا هل كنت على قمه هذا لحيل؟ قال الوعل "بعم هذا جيل عليه. إنه موضي قال حوادي الغزلان من على القمة؟! قال الوعل؛ موضي قال حوادي الغزلان من على القمة؟! قال الوعل؛ موضي هذا المكان." لكن يمكنني أن أرى بحيرة ضخمة باتجاه الغرب."

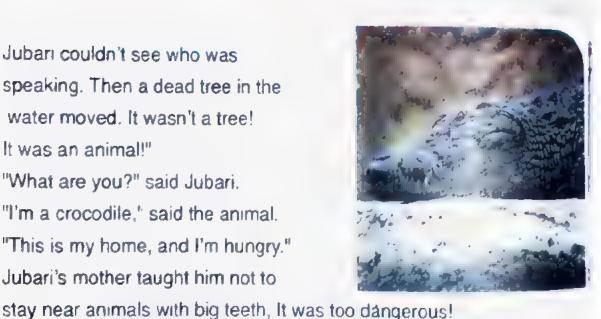
Jubari thought, "I've gone east I've gone south and north, but haven't gone west." He ran and ran. After a long time, he came to a very big lake. "What is this place?" he said. "This is Lake Nasser," said a voice. "It's a man-made lake. The people made it because they needed water. It's an important resource for them.



But delicious gazelles don't need water to drink, do they?"

فك خوباري فائلاً عد دهنت بجاه الشرق، وذهبت تجاه تجنوب والسيال بدل بنا دهب بجاء العالب وحرى، وبعد مده صويلة وصل في تحيره صحمه حد وقال عاشد البكال؟ المستع صوب لشول الهابخيرة من صبح الأسدال القد صبعها الناس لانهم كانوا في حاجه ال الله و بقد عليها الناء الهماء ال لطعم لا يحتاجون إلى الماء، أليس كذلك؟"

Jubari couldn't see who was speaking. Then a dead tree in the water moved. It wasn't a tree! It was an animal!" "What are you?" said Jubari. "I'm a crocodile," said the animal. "This is my home, and I'm hungry." Jubari's mother taught him not to



الم يستطع جوباري أن دري المتحدث. ثم تحركت شجرة ميته في الماء. أنها لم تكن شجرة! إنها كالت حيوان، قال العيوانات ذات الرَّسنان الضخمة. وكان هذا حطيرا حد



# Read and write T (True) or F (False).

The first animal Jubari met was a dugong
The sea water was fresh.
The mangrove forest is too salty for Jubari.
Jubari can run fast in Ras Hankorab beach.
The Gebel Elba is very steep for Jubari's legs
Lake Nasser is a natural lake.
The crocodile looked like a dead tree in the water

## Read and complete the sentences.

The sea water was very
The
The turtle lays her eggs in the
Jubari's

Gebel Elba is very .....
The crocodile is a
The

3

for Juban lives in the mangrove forest.

were going into soft sand
lives in Gebel Elba
for gazelles.
animal
lives in Lake Nasser

### Answer the following questions

Where does the dugong live?

What lives on the beach?

Why did Jubari's legs become tired?

Where does the Nubian ibex live?

i. What does the crocodile look like?



He ran and ran all the way home to the Wadi el Gemal.

ثم جرى وجرى ..... طوال الطريق لموطنه في وادي الجمال.

He looked for Subira. "Mom! Mom!"
he cried. "Jubari, my brave and
curious son. You are home," his
mother said. Smiling, she asked,
"Did you find the 'Wadi of the
Gazelles'?" "No, I didn't. But I
found a lot of other places."
"Did you like them?" his mother asked.



"Not all of them The mangroves were too salty. The beach was too sandy. The mountains were too steep. And there weren't many acacia trees.

وبدأ يبحث عن سويتر وهو تضرح وبقول. "أمي ، مي) قانت أمه وهي تسللم حوياري ولدي لشجاع والعصولي. أنت الان في موطنت وسألته وهي تنسلم "هل وحدث والاي العرلان؟ قال حوياري " لا الم احده. " لكني وحدث الكثير من الأماكن الاحرى" سألته أمه " بعن أحدث هذه الأماكن؟ "قان حوياري " بنس جميع الأماكن، فاشتجار المتحروف كائت مالحة حدا والشاطي كان مليد بالزمال وكانت الحدال شديدة الإنجدار ولم يكن عدث لكثير عن شجار السنط.".

JUBARI SEARCHES FOR HOME.



'Well, we have a lot of acacia trees here, and the desert is perfect for us o run and run!"

'Yes," said Jubari. "You were Wad el Gemal is the perfect place or gazelles."

I'm so happy that you agree,' she smiled



# Activities



# Read and write T (True) or F (False).

- Jubari looked for Donga.
- Jubari was brave and curious.
- Jubari found Wadi el Gemal.
- The mangroves were too sweet.
- The beach was too sandy. 5.
- There were a lot of acacia trees in the desert.

# (2) Read and complete the sentences.

- Jubari was ....... and curious. 1.
- The mountains were too
- 3. The desert was a
- There were many
  - 3 Answer the following questions.
- What is the moral of the story?
- Which ecosystem is very salty to Jubari? 2.
- What did Jubari look for at the end of the story? 3.
- Which ecosystem is too sandy for Jubari? 4.
- 5. Did Jubari find Wadi of the Gazelles?

place for gazelles. .

trees in the desert.

was too sandy.



# Read and write I (Irue) or F (False).

Jubari was born in Wadi el Gemal.

Jubari wanted to find the Wadi of the Camels

The first animal he met was a dugong.

He met a turtle, who was swimming in the sea

He climbed down into a deep canyon

When he met a dangerous crocodile, he ran home.

#### Choose the correct answer.

What did Subira teach Jubari to do if he met a dangerous animal?

a) Shout for help.

b) Run away.

Which animal offered Jubari some seagrass?

a) A Nubian ibex.

b) A dugong.

Why couldn't Jubari eat the seagrass?

a) It was too salty.

b) It was too wet.

Why did the turtle ask Juban not to walk on the sand?

a) His hooves were too big b) Her eggs were in the sand.

Why was Ras Hankorab beach not a good place for gazelles?

The sand was too soft to walk on b) The beach was too hot

# (3) Read and write Yesor No.

- Daffooils give gazelles food and water all year around. Acacia trees need gazelles because they take their seeds to new places. Dugongs eat leaves from mangrove trees. Turtles lay their eggs in the sand. 5. Dorcas gazelles find it easy to climb to the top of very steep mountains. Lake Nasser is a very big natural lake. 7. A crocodile can look like a dead tree in the water. 8. Gazelles and acacia trees are part of the ecosystem in Wadi el Gemal. Read and circle. Jubari and Subira live in ....
- - Wadi el Gemal
- b) the Wadi of the Gazelles
- When Jubari was young, Subira taught him which 2.
  - animals a)
    - b) plants
- Subira showed Jubari where to rest on ...
  - b) windy
- Subira taught him which

were dangerous.

m.

.19

to eat.

days.10

1

ħc

animals

a) hot

b) places

# Listening Texts

Unit (1)

#### Lesson (1)

isten and choose the correct answer.

labq is a very big Nat'onal Park in South ai. Along the coast here, there are 4.8 meters of mangrove forest, which is the est in the Red Sea. We went there to n why mangrove forests are so ortant for the marine ecosystem. When arrived at the beach, we saw trees wing out of the sea! Most trees can't grow alt water, but mangrove trees can

Lesson (3)

#### isten and choose the correct answer.

Malak wanted to learn more about the azon rainforest, because a lot of people cutting down the trees. The Amazon forest is a very important ecosystem. he living things in the rainforest need n other. Custard apple trees help many nals survive. The animals take the trees ds to other parts of the forest.

Lasson (4)

#### isten and choose the correct answer.

A kingfisher was visiting her old friend, lizard in a mangrove tree. She flew down I sat next to the lizard. The lizard looked People came and cut down some es. The trees protected the worms and the fish we eat, but now it's difficult for the kingfisher and the lizard to find food.

Lesson (5)

#### 1. Listen and choose the correct answer.

Eat healthy food like fruit, vegetables and fish .Play sports with your friends. Exercise regularly in the gym or outside. Keep moving. Walk, run, swim, or ride your bike. Take some time to relax and be quiet. Lesson (7)

#### 1. Listen and choose the correct answer.

Waiting for the rain It was another long, hot day in the grassland. Cub was with his mother, and he lay in the sunshine. But his mother looked worned Activities On Unit (1)

#### 1. Listen and choose the correct answer.

Your heart beats more over 100,000 times a day! So it's important to keep your heart healthy. When you walk, run, swim, or cycle, you make your heart work harder. If you exercise regularly, your heart works better and you can get the minerals, nutrients, and oxygen you need more easily

#### Unit (2)

#### Lesson (1)

### 1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

#### Victoria Falls

This enormous waterfall is on the Zambezi River, on the border between Zambia and Zimbabwe. It's 1,708 meters wide and 108 meters high. Every minute, over 5 million place where we get raw materials from the cubic meters of water falls into a big carryon which the water has eroded. When the water falls, it makes a lot of noise!

#### Lesson (4)

#### 1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Kamai has been to many places with his parents. They saw heavy snow in the mountains, flood in Sudan and amazing dust storms in the desert. He has learned a lot about extreme weather.

#### Activities On Unit (2)

#### 1- Listen and choose the correct arswer.

Moun Kilimanjaro is made of three volcanoes, but they haven't erupted for thousands of years. It is the tallest mountain soft banana and says its not hard, I can in Africa. It has lots of different ecosystems bend it and it has an odor It's a banana and at the top there is snow and ice

#### Activities On Review (1)

#### 1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

The Victoria Falls is an enormous waterfall on the Zambezi River. Every minute. 5 million cubic meters of water falls into a big canyon which the water has eroded. The water makes a lot of noise as it falls!

#### Unit (3)

#### Lesson (1)

# 1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

It's summer and Salma and her family are going to Marsa Alam for a holiday. Salma looks out of the car window and sees a sign to the Sukari gold mine. Mine Is a ground, like gold and coal.

#### Lesson (3)

# 1- Listen and choose the correct ausw r.

Egyptians used honey to make medicine It was very important for helping with problems with the skin or eyes. There are hieroglyphics in ancient temples which show people keeping pees

#### Lesson (4)

#### 1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Mona and Heba are in the living room They play a game. Mona's mom got something from the kitchen. Heba asks Mona to close her eyes. Mona picks up a Lesson (7)

#### 1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

loday we're going to do a science experiment You can work in groups of three There is a solid object in one box, and a container of liquid in another box. Youhave to study them and answer some questions.

# Listening Texts

# Activities On Unit (3)

# 1. Listen and choose the correct answer.

Peuple in ancient Egypt used mud to puild houses and other buildings. They pok it from the Nile when it was soft and made it into square bricks. These were nard and strong when they dried.

#### Unit (4)

#### Lesson (1)

# (. Listen and choose the correct answer.

Lusually get the bus to school, but Dad nok me to school today. I opened the car door and got in. It didn't take long to get to school. I thanked my dad, and closed the car door. I was early, so I had some time to alk to my friends.

#### Lesson (4)

#### l. Listen and choose the correct answer.

Grandpa showed the children a pair of shoes. "They don't look like normal shoes." said Hady. "You're right," Grandpa replied. 'Let's go outside. I'll show you what the shoes an do." Hoda and Hady followed Grandpa but of the house to a hill. They were very excited. They sat down and Grandpa took hree pairs of shoes from a bag.

#### Lesson (5)

#### - Listen and choose the correct answer

Sherif wanted to be an engineer when ne was 10 years old. He always watched TV programs about robots, and he loved making things. When he was 13, he started helping a robot design company online.

#### Lesson (7)

#### 1. Listen and choose the correct answer

Ali is 10 years old. He lives in the 9" century. One day, He saw an inventor called Abbas Ibn Firnas. He was trying to fly like birds. He used wings made of wood and feathers. He flew from a top of a tower But he couldn't land correctly. He hurt himself. He was the first man to fly

#### Activities On Unit (4)

#### 1- Listers and choose the conject asswer.

I usually get the bus to school, but Dad took me to school today. I opened the car door and got in. Dad started the car and when we passed the park, the car was travelling at 40 kilometres an hour. Hike it when Dad takes me to school

#### Activities (1) On Review (2)

#### 1. Listen and choose the correct answer

An pasis is a place in the desert which has lots of natural resources. If water didn't come from under the ground, the plants wouldn't grow. If you visited an oasis, you would see beautiful trees and flowers in the middle of the desert. People have lived in these cases for hundreds of years.

Agriculture is very important and people can grow lots of different fruits and vegetables

#### Activities (2) On Review (2)

#### 1. Listen and choose the correct answer

Copper was another very important metal. It was easy to bend, and people used it to make tools, cooking pots, and knives, as well as jewelry. We can see a lot of these objects today in Egyptian museums.

# Model Answers

	Letts rem	rember		Lesso	n (2)	
1) Read and com	plete the tex	t with words from the bott	1) Choose th	e coffect anawe	The second second	
homework	The same of the	Presentation	1) who	2) where	3) which	Α.
3) blogs		4 viogs	5) which	6) who	7) Who	4) Who
2) Choose the co	frest adamai.	1093	9) which	10) who	11) Where	8) where
	made	3) vlogs 4) man	13) who	14) where	15) Who	12) Which
5: largest 8	_	7) invertebrate	17) where	18) who	19) where	18) Which
	primary	1 - HIAGLIGIDI GIG		complete with t	he consen form	20) Who
3) Order the wor	ds to make .	to all parities as	1) who	2) who	3) which	
1 Cairo is the lai	roest only in E	onet senetices	5) which	6) where	7) Who	4) Who
2 Airplanes will	IISA SAIST AND	wypt	O) IVIII		-	8) which
. We're talking a	about racyclir	ngy in the future.			m (3)	
4. We often eat of	uir meals with	h hasan	,	chowe the co.		
5: What are you	doing at the	moment?	1) ecosystem	1 2) living	3) surviye	4) seeds
5) Ponctuate the	following	HOTTIGE ILE	2) Read and	complete the te	at with words	from the he
- The store sells		ry and hans	1) do		<ul><li>2) Photogra</li></ul>	apher
• Do Fares and t			3) ecosystem		4) Custard	apple
		n you visit Jordan?		e tor.ett answc		
, o o,			1) patient	2) down	<ol><li>beauty</li></ol>	
	Unit (	[1]	4) patience	5) success	6) lucky	7) beauty
	Leason	34.5	8) patience			
1) Distance and since				words to make		ces,
1) Listen and cho				down trees in t		
	mangrove	3) marine 4) sait		on rainforest is	a very importe	int
		with words from the box	ecosystem			
	Sinai	3) marine 4) fish	- *	o quiet importa		
3) Choose the co		O March A A A A A		ition is a great :		
-	important	3) thick 4) survive		to have a lot of		
	interact	7) living 8) sait		test and answer		š.
	caroon dio	(ICB		correct answer.		
	Interact	<del>-</del>		ner 2) Maak		st
4) Order the wor				following ques		
1 Mangrove tree:				i lot of people a	-	
,		als and plants in an area		d to show peop		parts of
3 Mangrove leav				ecosystem inte		
5) Read the text			6) Write a to:	ct of FIFTY (50)		
AiChoose the corr				(The Amazo		
ecosystem ?		1, small	The Ar	nazon rainfore	est is a ve	iry Importa
B)Answer the folio			ecosystem.	All the living th	ings in the ra	Unforest net
4 It's all the anim	ais and plant	s in an area	each other.	Custard apple	trees help n	narry anima
5. To survive				animals take th		
6) Write a test of			of the forest	. All the parts	of the forest	į .
	The HERETICA		ecosystem in	teract.		
_		very important for the		Lesso	n (4)	
•	_	est forest in the Red Sea.	1s Isaban and	chause the cor	4 - 4	
		in sait water. Their roots			3) out dowl	a 4) lizard
,		hing away when there are	1) Kingfisher			14
		nick. These special leaves		e correct allower		
stop the plants to	sing water w	hen it's very hot.	1) protect	2) fc od	3) Worried	

7) bees

5) cut down 6) worried

4) Surprised

stop the plants losing water when it's very hot.

# **Model Answers**

gless the text and answer the questions ilchoose the correct answer. 3) lizard. plasmer the following questions. in a mangrove tree. Because people cut down trees. Order the words to make correct sentences. The dugong says that the people are back. How will you help the trees grow? people came and cut down some trees Mangrove trees are part of the ecosystem

#### Lesson (5)

|| Listen and choose the correct answer. 2) sports 4 relax 1) figh g feed and complete the text with words from the box 2) heart 3) exercise 4, oxygen i beats ) (hoose the correct answer. ) veins and arteries 2) Arteries 4) oxygen and nutrients S) sunlight () lead the text and answer the questions Michoose the correct answer 2) sunlight lianwer the following questions. ( Our circulatory system. 5) Through arteries and veins i) Order the words to make correct sentences. || I play sports with my friends. 2) How often does your heart beat? 6) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about: (How to keep your heart healthy,

It is important to keep your heart healthy. To keep your heart healthy, eat healthy food like, fruit, vegetables, and fish. You should play sports with your friends. You must keep moving. Walk, run, swim, or ride your bike. Take some time to relax and be quiet.

#### Lesson (6) f) Read and complete the text with words from the box

2) volleybalı

3) Fridays		4) and	
2) Choose th	e correct answer		
1) because	2) 80	3) and	4, but
5) and	6) but	7) and	8 because
9) 80	10) and	(1) becau	\$0
12) but	13) because		
3) Read and	complete with ti	e correct for	rin.
1) but	2) because	3) but	
4) and	5) 80		
	a second to a high	An always	B.c.

1) sports center

4) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about: (How to keep healthy)

You should play sports with your friend if you want to be healthy. You should exercise requierly. Healthy food is also important. You should have healthy food like fruit, vegetables and fish. You can play tennis or tootball.

The football club is popular so there are always a lot of people.

#### Lesson /71

	6400	P ( 2 )		
1) Usten ar	nd chaose the co	rect answer.		
, hot	2) Čub	3 sunshine	1	womed
2) Choose !	he correct answe	r.		
1) grow	2) <b>min</b>	3 hungry	4	falling
⇒, Will	€, won't	7 will	g	can'i
(a) Can				
3) Read the	text and answe	r the questions		
A)Choose th	e correct answer			
1 grassiano	d 2, Mother	3) dub		
B) Answer th	e following ques	tions		

She felt worned.

The grass won't grow.

4) Order the words to make correct sentences We will be very hungry

- 2. They must wart for rain.
- Can we catch a rabbit to eat?
- S) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about.

The grassland is an important ecosystem. It is not Some animals live in grassland. When it rains, the grass grow. The animals will find their food. If it doesn't rain. the grass won't grow. It's difficult for animals to find their food. All living things need each other to survive

Administration of the	99		
,	. Activity of	n wait († )	•
t) Listen an	d choose the for	rect answer	
n beats	3 healthy	5 heart	: exercise
2) Read and	complete the te	at with words	livin the box
blood		? Artenes	
) oxygen		a carbon o	loxide
3) Read the	test and allawe	the question:	
A)(hoose the	correct answer		
SUIVIVE	mangrove	traes	insects
B)Answet th	e tollowing ques	tions	
Hundreds	of different kind	ls of fish, birds	i, insects
and other			
Bees mak	e a special hone;	from the many	grove flowers.
4) The Read	er		

A) Read and write I (Tiue) or F (False) D) F

8) Complete the following sentences 2) dattodil 5) Choose the correct answer. 3: where 2) who 6 because - but i which

6) Order the words to make the rest sentences . What lives in mangrove forests? Wael likes fish, but he doesn't like lamb

· Seleem eats healthy food like fruit

#### 7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about

There are different kinds of ecosystems. There are rainforest ecosystem, manne ecosystem, grassland ecosystem, freshwater ecosystem and forest ecosystem in an ecosystem, living things such as plants and animals interact with non-living things such as water, rocks and soil They need each other to survive.

#### Jnit (2)

#### Lesson (1)

- 1) Listen and choose the correct answer
- Zambezi 1,708 3 high 4) noise
- 2) Road and complete the text with words from the bor augest. countries 3 dunes 4) dry
- 3) Read, the text and answer the questions
- A Choose the correct answer

volcanoes 3 thousand

D. Asswer the to lowing questions

Mount Kilimanjaro

At the top of the mountain.

4) Order the words to make correct sentences How tall is Mount Klimanjaro?

The Sphara Desert is the hottest desert in the world

The African continent is an amazing place.

5) Choose the correct answer

Crater 2 dunes canyon Eruot valley

6) Write a text of FIFTY (56) words about

The African continent is an amazing place, with mountains, deserts, lakes, valleys, and rainforests. There are beautiful coasts, waterfalls, and volcanoes. It has some of the most famous natural wonders in the world. Mount Kilimanjaro is one of them. It's the tallest mountain in Africa. The Sahara Desert is the largest hot desert in the world

#### Lesson (2)

#### The past simple

1. Choose the correct answer

Went play visited did didn't

2) Order the words to make correct sentences

· I made a cup of tea.

- 2 What did you eat yesterday?
- Did you travel on a ship yesterday?
- 4 We did our homework an hour ago.
- They didn't eat ful medames.
- 3) Road and complete with the correct form

1 traveled 2 went 31 met

studied traveled

#### The present perfect

- 1) Choose the correct answer
- has traveled 2) has fold
- 3) has made 4) have never sailed 5) met
- 2) Order the words to make correct sentences,
- 1) Have you ever traveled to Luxor?
- 2) She has visited a traditional market
- 3) Sara has never traveled to Aswan
- 4) Have they ever visited another country?
- 5) He has never eaten saydeya
- 3) Read and complete with the correct form
- 1 seen 2) never
- 4) Has 5) ever

#### Activities

- 1) Read and complete the text with words from the box.
- 1) holiday 2) visited

3) travel 4) went

- 2) Choose the correct answer
- n has eaten 2) haven't visited ". Has 4) have told iraveled 6) Have you eaten
- have 8 ever have never 10) made

#### Lesson (3)

- 1) Read and complete the text with words from the box.
- 1, man-made 2) Egypt
- 3) Kings
- 2) Read the text and answer the questions
- A)Choose the correct answer
- 1, centuries 2) South Africa
- B)Answer the following questions
- 4) The ruins of Great Zimbabwe
- 5. South Africa and Namibia.
- 3) Choose the correct answer
- 1) continent 2) wonders 3) Archaeologists 41 ruins 5) columns 6 adventure
- 7 temples 8<sub>1</sub> natural in caves
- 10) language 11) Walk
- 4) Order the words to make correct sentences

The Sahara Desert wasn't dry in the past Visitors can see birds and monkeys in Rwanda There are 54 countries in Africa.

. The natural world is beautiful in Africa

#### Lesson (4)

- 1) Listen and choose the correct answer
- ' parents 4) weather 2) snow 3) desert
- 2) Read and complete the text with words from the box
- 1 storm-chasers 2) hurncane extreme 4) study
- s) Choose the correct answer

71 won

2) thunderstorm 1. storm-chaser

At weather

3) hurricane 4) flood 51 **look** 6) dust storm

# **Model Answers**

order the words to make correct sentences. 1) Has no taken hundreds of photos?

Heavy snow fell on the mountain Sicrim-phasers are interested in thunderstorms.

They took some photos of the hurricane

5) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

The storm-chaser is the person who travel to places phase a hurr cane or another form of extreme weather event to study it. He is a good photographer. He takes photos of floods, thunderstorms and dust storms Its a very interesting job.

#### lesson (5)

1) Read and complete the text with words from the box 3) volcanoes 4 villages

21 lava 2) Geose the correct answer.

2) erupt 1) ava 5, ash A) SOIL

3) mud flow 6) sland

3) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Their and of Javan

The island of Java is very pretty island, where almost everything is made of lava. It comes from Java's volcances, which look down on the villages below. When they erupt, there's ash and fire. Smoke fills the air. The lava and ash mix with mud flows. This makes soil where good food grows

#### Lesson (6)

f) Read and complete the text with words from the Lox

2 ake 1) arches 4 erodea 3) sandstone

2) Choose the correct answer

a sun 1) Bridge 2) eroded 3) ride. 2, summer 8 rocks 5) formation of sandstone

3) Read the text and answer the questings

AlChoose the correct answer

3) 120 1) geological imestone

B)Answer the following questions.

4) The Pinnacles

Si Early in the morning or late afternoon

- 4) Order the words to make correct sentences
- 1) Rainbow Bridge is 200 million years old
- h A river eroded a hole in the sand stone
- of The monument is in a vi-ry hot desert
- 4. Don't forget to take your water bothe

#### Lessoi 171

- i) Read and complete the text with words from the box
- . excited 1 statues 1 tickets 2) balloon
- 2) Choose the correct answer.
- baskets gentie. 1 ribbon In fight
- or pilal. b. Flame
- 3) Order the words to make correct sentences.
- h Mariam loved watching birds

- The book is about hot air balloon flights.
- 5, Would you like to have a ride?
- 4) Read the text and answer the questions

AlChoose the correct asswer

1. birds 2, Luxor 3 excited

B) Answer the following questions

- 5 Mariam's dad It was a diary.
- 5) Write a test of FIFTY (50) words about

A the on a her air own fill

I went on a trip to Luxor I had tickets for the Luxor hot air balloon festival. I found the diary of the pilot. He lit the flame. The weather was perfect, with no rain and a gentle wind. We flew over the statues and temples

#### Activity on unit (2,

- 1) Listen and choose the correct auswer
- three 2 years 3 Africa
- 2) Read and complete the text with words from the box.
- storm-chasers 1 grandparents
- a. weather 5) hurricane
- 3) Read the text and answer the questions
- A)Choose the torrect answer
- n Bridge 2 1910 3 spring
- B)Answer the following questions
- ... It is 88 meters tail
- You have to take a boat, ride a horse, or walk to it.
- 4) The Reader
- A)Read and write T (True or F (raise)

. F T 2 T

8) Complete the following sentences

 white 3 salty

5) Choose the correct apparet

. did 3 ever t never 3 ate been in visited.

el Order the anies to nue correct cententes

Have Kamal's parents been to Sudan? We have got lickets for the festival.

The Sahara Desert covers eleven countries

7) Brite a text of FIFTY (50) words about

There are many man-made wonders in Egypt. The Sphinx is one of them. The Ancient Egyptian built it at Giza it has the head of a man and a body of a lion. It is fantastic. Tourists from all over the world come and watch it. There are others in Africa and Egypt.

#### Activities on Review (1)

- t) Listen and choose the correct answer
- Debore to 4 water tive
- 2) Road and complete the test with words from the box Archaeologists man made
  - 4. volcano , natural

3 #	
3 Read the test and answer the questions	They are clean and never run out. Solar energy is renewable energy isn't clean who
The Carry	energy Non-renewable energy Isn't clean When we but tossit tuels, we can't use them again
rainforest calm scare	tossit fuels, we can't use them again.
blanswer the following question	3-11
* WORKEYS, Shakes birds and note	Lesson (2)
You must be very quiet  1) The Resolution	Conditional (if)
Bead and a star of	1) thouse the correct answer.
Read and enteres study or F. False	assistant Communication
Cample 11.	29/4
salty sandy	met Ot will to be
>) Choose the correct allower.	2) Read and complete with the correct form.
Saw have	) will 2) dign't 3) takes
because	Cumulat Experience or a
HIDE A SAME TO SEE	i nau
6) Order the words to make correct scatences	Activities
The beautiful natural world is in Africa.	1) Read and complete the text with words from the box
The Amazon reinforest is an important ecosystem.	Throughlans 2 Dones 3 digging 4) should
There are many volcanoes on Java Island.	LI CHOUSE THE COTTECT ANSWEL.
/) Write a text of FIFTY (**) Words mout	1) bones 2) digging 3) in
Look to at all and a second	skeletons 5) shovel or will
I get up at six o'clock, i have healthy breakfast to	had 8) would 9 stay
Walk Byery day and I new coords with	3) head the text and answer the questions.
The resulting topic like that and venetables the te	Choose the correct area
bed early because I don't want to be tired in the morning.	1) last week 2) 8 a classmates
[i / 3	plansworthe tolle
	We saw really big dinosaur skeletons
Lesson ( )	It is fantastic.
1) Listen and coose the correct answer	t) order the words to make correct sentences.
Marsa Alam car	They are going to the mountains
gold raw	What would you do if you had a bike?
2) head and complete the distoy with acros from the bus.	I found some dinosaur bones
Marsa Alam / What mine Can	5) write a text of FIFTY (10) words about;
3) Chouse the correct answer	A top to a stage to the file soon
state > boil 1 liquid freeze	Went to the Egyptian Geological Museum I wer
gas solid solid fixed	with my friends. We went by school bus. We saw real
it solld 'T raw wood fossil	Dig dinosaur skeletons. The museum is fantastic Th
12 Gases	guide told us interesting information about dinosaura
4) head and complete the text with words from the bux.	We came back home at eight o'clock.
boiled steam froze ice	Lesson (3 )
5) Order the words to make correct sentences.	1) History and chance the country
A solid has a fixed shape	1) Listen and choose the correct answer. Egyptians 2) important 3 eves 3 bees
The sun gives us solar energy.	Egyptians 2) important 3: eyes 3) bees 4) thousan the correct answer.
3) When you boil water, it turns to steam	nt
6) Read the text and answer the questions.	factorial of economy in terrial
1) Chouse the ca	t peut peut
1. natural resources Gold natural	The second secon
8] Abstreet! Inflywer or and	3) head the text and answer the questions.
to The sun	homes home
5) Because when we burn tossil fuels, we can't use	honey hives cheap
them again.	Though the fellowing question
// Write a text off (13 Y (1) mores about.	They put honey on the cut.
the ore in	So that the bees could find new flowers.
	4) Order the words to make correct sentences
There are two kind of resources. They are renewable	The Nile flooded and made the soil fertile.
and non-renewable. Renewable energy like sun and wind	People used flax to make linen.

### Model Answer

3) Ancient Egypt was very successful. of write a test of .... ( ) words shout

People kept bees to make honey in ancient Egypt They used honey to make food taste sweet. They used They used the are Reserved a bourself, you could put noney on the cut Bees I ved in houses made of ciay. The houses are called hives. People moved the hives, so the bees could find new flowers.

#### Lesson

() Listen and choose the correct answer

t) living room (2) moon 3 her eyes. banana

2) Choose the correct answer.

sticky mass 2) odor 1) Blind Steam = liquid 5) gas

8) comfortable 9) sticky (i) hard 3) Read the lext and answer the questions

Alchoose the correct whomes

comfortable happy n blind

5)Answer the following

4) Because her cousin has just arrived from Alex.

It is rough, and it has an odor.

4) Order the words to make correct centenroc

1) The glue is sticky.

2) Welcome to my house.

3) What are the chairs like?

5) Write a text of [Ir] ( 50) words about:

IA , SCHOOL & WITE MAKE!

Strawberry is a delicious fruit. It has a red color. It is a solid. It has a soft touch. You can fee the texture of the strawberry lit's soft but you can't bend it. It's a healthy fruit.

#### Lesson (\*)

- f) Read and complete the text with words from the box
- a experiment of pour

2) Chanse the correct answer.

- ⊕ detergent → sticky 2) container 1) do
- sink A liquid (i) syringe layer

10) syrup 3) floats

3) Read the text and answer the questions.

A)Choose the correct ausmer

3) alnk 1) on foot .21.5

B)Answer the following questions

1) A science experiment Because it is interesting

4' Dider the words to make correct sentences

1 Honey is thick and sticky

1) The heavier liquids sink to the bottom

5 Milk and water are liquids

5) Write a text of all I (at) words about

Today we're going to do a science experiment What happens when we pour different ilquids into one

container? They mix together, Liquids have a different mass. The heavier liquids sink to the bottom. The liquids with a lower mass float on top

#### Lesson ( )

f) Pend and complete the dialog with words from the hor waterfalls flamingo

2) Choose the correct answer

bird u on **casis** orchards on \* coastline farming DUSY

3) Read, the text and answer the questions

vacation popular Damietta + define

They are places where fruit trees are grown

Its history

( ) words about 4) Write a text of

I went to a school trip last Friday I went with my friends. We went to Alexandria Library. We went by school bus. We met the librarian and saw many books. They library is fantastic It's very enormous. We enjoyed a lot. We learnt more about its history

#### · Lesson ( )

#### Reported speech

1) Choose the correct answer.

could had kked can would was

2) Choose the correct answer

worked ! loves can was. wanted < liked

3) Read, and complete with the correct form said played could

went would

#### Activities

1) Listen and choose the correct answer

groups experiment 1 answer - solid

2) Choose the correct answer

could llauld with liked Was went

, need W85 çan

3) Read, the text and answer the questions

school Science subject

He went on a school trip to the Science Museum About the environment.

4) Order the words to make correct sentences Do you need to borrow a calculator? Hike visiting the park.

Let's do a science experiment.

4) Morn said it was cold and rainy. it larked to my friends. 5) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about: 4) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about. (A visit to the museum) Your new bike) I went to a visit to the museum. I went with my family. We went in our father's car. We saw many old things that were precious. We enjoyed our trip a lot because it was amazing. We went back home tired but we were happy. Activity on unit (3) 1) Listen and choose the correct answer. Lesson (2) 1) mud 2) Nile bricks 4) strong Read and complete the text with words from the box. 1: Alexandria 2) train 3) visited 4) eniov 3) Read the text and answer the questions. A) Choose the correct answer. 1) city 21 early 3) one B) Answer the following questions. 4) The traffic is always busy on her way to school 5) Big and very exciting. 4) The Reader. A) Read and write T (True) or F (Faise). 3) F 41 F B) Complete the following sentences 3) Lake 4: teeth 5) Choose the correct answer 1 ate 2 will 3) had 4: would 5 could 6, goes 6) Order the words to make correct sentences. 1 Coal and gas are non-renswable resources. 2) People make linen from flax. 3: Who liked honey in ancient Egypt? 7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about (Papyrus) Ancient Egypt was very successful because it had good natural resources. They had papyrus They used this strong plant to make things such as basket and Lesson (3) sandals but the most important thing they made from it was paper. The ancient Egyptians made some of first 1) paper 2) vertically 3) over books in the world using it. 1) piece 2) top Unit (4) tip 3) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about: 

#### Lesson (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer. 1) bus 2) Dad 3) thanked 4) Irlands 2) Choose the correct answer. 1) bike 2) cycle 3: science 4) pedals 5) brakes 6, speed 7) up brakes 9) **pull** 10) cycling 3) Read the text and answer the questions A) Choose the correct answer 2) arrive 3) Dad

B)Answer the following questions

4. At 40 kilometers an hour.

My birthday is today. My parents bought me a new bike as a present They teach me how to ride the bike. I learned how to move it. I push the pedals to move the bike. To make the bike stop, use the brakes If I want to ncrease the speed, I push the pedals more quickly

	Questi	on tag	
1) (hoose t	he correct answe		
11 IS	2) did		Will)
4) can't	5) won't		4411)
2) Read and	complete with t	he correct for	'n
1) won'i	2) live	3) can't	4) went
	Activ		
1) Read and	complete the text	with the words	in the her
O AALIERE	∠) scieniist	3) Oravity	All market and
2) Read and c	omplete the senter	nces with the w	ords in the b
1) friction	2) p	uli	3) slowly
4) smaller	5) sr	Dace	-/ SIOWJY
3) Choose th	e correct answer		
li Friction	2) tension	3) Air resist	ance
Spring for	ce 5) Gravity	6) didn't the	IV.
can't they	8) will he	9) is it	*
01 they			
(i) Order the	words to make co	orrect sentenc	es.
It won't rain	n tomorrów, wat s	t?	
Your mom	doesn't speak Fi	rench, does si	ne?
She didn't	have chicken, di	dishe?	
i) Complete :	the question tags		
does	2) won't	3) can (	
, did			

1) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box. 4 dart 2) Read and complete the text with words from the box down

To make a paper airplane. Fold a piece of paper In half vertically. Open the paper. Fold over the top two comers. Turn the paper over. Fold it in half and crease it Fold down the two wings. Your dart is ready to fly

#### Lesson #1

5

1) Listen i	and choose the co	rect answer.	
1) shoes.	2) normal	3) hill	4) excited
2) Read ar	ed complete the to	at with words	from the box
1) up	2) higher	3) sides	4) feeling
3) Order ti	he words to make	correct senten	ces
Distande:	1		

#### **Model Answers** no you have something to show us? The children enjoy flying above the village. lerves fall to the ground in fall. pad the text and answer the questions. I have the correct answer purser the following questions To watch his favorite football team. 5) Gravity. Lesson (5) Elsten and choose the correct answer : thirteen 2) robots 3, making engineer I Chanse the correct answer. asironaut 2) float Engineers 6) Air resistance 5) pilot order the words to make correct sentences She has good computer skills. An architect designs new buildings. We can travel on an aircraft. iffead the text and answer the questions Moose the correct answer. 3) Dalia 2) health Maswer the following questions. She enjoys traveling. ) She likes working with people and she'd like to

I like science very much. I want to be an engineer when I grow up. It is an interesting job. An engineer can fesign new buildings. He can make bridges. An engineer toesn't make buildings and bridges only. An engineer niso helps make things such as skateboards.

#### Lesson (7)

4 first

#### l) Listen and circle the correct answer 2) century 3 wood Choose the correct answer

5) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about

21 invented 31 land ) builder

5) inventor ) feathers

work in medicine

Order the words to make correct sentences

Abbas Ibn Firnas was a inventor.

He used wings to fly like birds

He invented water clocks.

) Read the text and answer the questions

Choose the correct an ire

time · Piffy <sup>2</sup> vound Answer the following questions

He was an important person who invented many things No,he didn't

Write a text of FIFTY (10) words about.

Abbas Ibn F mas)

Abbas Ibn Firnas was an inventor in the 9th century. was trying to fly like birds. He used wings made of ood and feathers. He flew from a top of a tower But he

couldn't land correctly. He hurt himself. He was the first man to fly.

#### activity on unit (4)

4 Dad

1) Listen and choose the correct answer 3) hour

2, door 2) Read and complete the text with words from the hox 3) company - own

making l) programs

3) Read the text and answer the questions

A) (hoose the correct answe

31 wood 2) clocks 1) inventor

B) Answer the following questions

He jumped from a lower. Because he was probably the first person ever to fly using wings.

4) The Reader

has

A)Read and write T (true) or F 1 . . . T 21 F

B) Answer the following quest

2 acacia el Gemal 5) Choose the correct answer.

won't 2) don't ISTIT didn't 5 have can

6) Order the words to make correct sentences

You use a push force to jump.

Without speed you will fall over the bike. I am interested in stars and planets.

7) Write a test of FICTY (50) words about

Gravity is what makes things fall to the ground. It is the force that makes leaves fall to the ground in fall and not float above the tree. When the boy jumps on the bed, gravity brings him down and stops him floating up into the air. It is also the force that keeps the planets moving -----

STOUTING THE SUI	1.			
Acti	vities (1)	an Review		
Listen and c	happe the cor	rest answer		
desert		<ul> <li>hundred</li> </ul>	8	
Agriculture		vegetab	les	
" Read and co	mplets the di	slog with word:	s from the box	
engineer		job		
factory		· · luck		
3) Read the te	ext and answe	er the question	5	
AlChoose ti				
water	∂.u	hundre	d	
£	6-4-7			
Abbas Ibn I	Firnas.	Al-Mag	ata.	
To Proc				
1 50 1				
1+ <b>T</b>	- 1	F	3 F	
B)Complete th	ne following:	senter	•	
	c: dugong			
(Yoose the	correct ans	MA C F		

3 Went

isn't

3) Answer the following questions. 51 didn't 3) Assert the thirm which animals were dangerous and 6) Order the words to make correct sentences 1) Without using the pedals you will fall over the bile. how to stay away from predators. 2) The Wadi of the Camela. A glass window has a rough texture. 3) They used honey as a medicine. 3) Daffodil and acacia. 7) Write a test of FIFTY (50) words about: 4) The acacla tree leaves give them water. 5) They take their seeds to new places. IA ob your we to do When I grow up, I want to be an architect. This is the 6) To look for the Wadi of the Gazellea job f like. It is interesting, I like drawing and making things Activities (P. 229) so I want to be an architect. The architect can design 1) Read and write True (T) or Falsa (F). many houses. He also can design building and houses. 2) F 1) T Activities (2) on Review (2) 6) F 5) T 7) T 1) listes and choose the correct answer. 1º CODDer 2 band 2) Road and complete the sentences. 3. tools 4. Egyptian 1) salty 2) dugong 3) sand Read and complete the text with words from the box 5) lbex 4) hooves 6) steep 1 Agriculture 2 Egypt 7) dangerous 8) crocodile 4/ crops 3) Answer the following quest lons. 3) Read the text and answer the questions. 1) in the mangrove forest. 2) The turtle. A) Choose the correct answer 3) Because the mountain was very steep. 2 cold 4) In Gebel Elba. -A dead tree. B)Answer the following questions. 4 Because the acacia trees give them food and enough Activities (P. 232) 51 Acacia seed. 1) Read and write True (T) or False (P). 4) The Reader. 1) F 2) T 4) F A) Read and write T (true) or F (False) 5) T 6) T 2 7 3 F 2) Read and complete the sentences. B) Complete the following sentences. 1 brave 2) steep 3) perfect 1 Lake 2 ibex 4) beach 5) acacia 5) Choose the correct answer. 3) Answer the following questions. 2 could 31 don't 1) To listen to your parent's advice. 4 would grow 5 were 61 ian't Marine ecosystem. / Mangrove trees. 6) Order the words to make correct sentences. 3) He looked for Subira. 1, Waleed played football with his friend. 4) Coastal ecosystem. 2) Gravity stops people flying up into space. 5) No, he didn't. 3: What would you do if you had a lot of money? General Activities (P. 233) 7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about: 1) Road and write True (T) or False (F). Salt was also a very important resource in ancient 21 F 3) T Egypt, and they sold it to other countries, too. People 5) F 61 T used salt to keep food fresh. It was also useful in 2) Choose the correct answer. medicine and agriculture. Some of the lakes in the Nile 1 1) Run away 12) A dugong 3) It was too salty. Delta had lots of sait. 4) Her eggs were in the sand. 5) The sand was loo soft to walk on. The story 3) Read and write Yes or No. Activities (P. 224) 4) Yee 1) No -2) Yes No. 5) No B) Yes 6) Na -7) Yes () Read and write True (T) or False (F). 4) Road and circle. 1, 1 2, T 4) F 1) Wadi el Gemal 2) plants 51 T 6, F 3) hot 4) animals 2) Read and complete the sentences. 2) plants 1) Wadi el Gemai 5) the acacle tree 4: daffodii -



# CONNECT

# **Final Revision**



# Unit (1)

# Life in my world

#### **Ecosystems**

grassland
rainforest
freshwater
living things
non-living things
Amazon rainforests

#### **Animals**

dugong kingfisher lizard

#### The heart

arteries veins carbon dioxide

#### Others

salt water mangrove tree custard apple tree medicinal plant survive

4]	9	C	Ĺ	İ	٧	e

beautiful patient lucky successful

المراعى / أرض غشبية	animals	حبوانات
غابة مطيرة	species	انواع / فصائل
ماء عذب	soil	تربة زراعية
كائنات حبة	thick	سميك
كاننات غبر حية	canopy	مظلة
عا <b>بات الاما</b> زون المطيرة	community	جتمع ا

حيوان الأطوم	worm .	دودة
طائر الرفراف		شبل
	buzzing bees	طنیں الحل
سعييه	Duzzing book	

شرايين	oxygen	آکسجین
أوردة	beat	يدق / ينبض
ثاني أكسيد الكربون	blood	دم .

		1
ماء مالح	wadi	وادي
شجرة المانجروف		أمراض
شجرة تفاح الكاسترد		أمراض
نبات طبی		يتفاغل
ينجو / يبقى علي قيد الحياة	pollen	حبوب اللقاح
₩		

# Abstract Noun

Help your child revise unit (1).

#### Relative Clauses

who

الذي / التي (للعاقل)

for people

e.g. We met a man who works in a garden.

for things

A wadi is an ecosystem which is normally dry.

where

حيث (للـءن)

forplaces

We learned a lot about the area where they live.

# Linking Words

#### and

We went to the beach are we swam in the sea.

### but

Hany likes basketball, out he doesn't like football.

### because

Salma goes to the pool ecause she likes swimming.

SO

Lara wants to keep her heart healthy, she does exercise.

Help your child revise unit (1).

AI-BAHER - Connect Plus (5) - First Term 3

# **General Activities**

E1 10			. Abo cor	rect :	answer from a	), b. c.	Or a	
(1	) [	isten and	choose the cor	ierr i	answer from a	-1 -1 -1	or a,	
1.		veins and water	arteries carry .  b) food	c)	carbon dioxid move blood		around b	
2.	a)	Arteries	b) Veins		car	ry bloo	d to the	h hear
		Oxygen don't use	b) Veins			u)	like plan	
	a) (	oxygen	b) blood	C)	carbon dioxide	e a)	water	
(-			hoose the cor	rect a	nswer from a	, <b>b</b> , <b>c</b> , (	or d.	
1.		em loves		144			***********	٠,
2			b) money		c) English		math	
			b) healthy		c) unhealthy	d) 1	aet	food,
			much		of criticating	u) i		
4.	a) a In th	ipples e evening,	b) bananas	S .		*** ******	chocolate	
	a) s	leep	b) run	١ .	c) relax	d) s	study	
2	Re	ad and con	nplete the dial	og wi	th words from	the bo	Ж.	
Tal					g-area -des	ert		
Toka		What is a	an ecosystem, i	Roqia	1?			
Roq		It is all th	e animals and	plant	s in an 1)			
Toka		Which ed	cosystems do w	e ha	ve in Egypt?			
	ecosystem and a marine ecosystem.							
	oka : What are some of the 3) things in a marine acceystem?					m?		
Rogi		may ale	7)		······	2	and whal	es.
Toka		The Court of the	or your informat	lion.	TTE #7000000000000000000000000000000000000		HIGH WITH	
Rogi	a :	You're we	elcome					

#### **Final Revision**

# Read and complete the text with words from the box.

#### sunlight-protect-food-happy-sad

Humans need sunlight, too. We can't make our own 1) but we get vitamin (D) from 2) . This can help 3) us from gefting sick. Sunlight also makes a lot of people feel 4)

# Read the following text then answer the questions.

Nabq is a very big National Park in South Sinai. We went there to learn why mangrove forests are so important for the marine ecosystem. When we arrived at the beach, we saw trees growing out of the sea! Most trees can't grow in salt water, but mangrove trees can. They have amazing roots which grow high out of the water. These roots help them get oxygen. When I touched the trees leaves, they felt very thick. These special leaves stop the plants losing water when it's very hot. Mangrove trees protect the non-living things and the living things in the marine ecosystem. When there are storms, their deep roots stop the sand washing away.

#### A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1.	The mangrov	ve forests are ve	ry important for the	ecosystem.
	a) descrt	b) marine	c) sand	d) grassland
2.	The mangro	ve tre <mark>es g</mark> row on		· water.
	a) cold	b) hot	c) saity	d) sweet
3.	The underlin	ed word " thick'	to the opposite of	
,	a) big	b) tall .	c) thin	d) large

#### B) Answer the following questions.

4. What does the underlined word "there" refer to?

link a re like or her ext.

5. What is special about the races and leaves of the mangrove trees?

			(1)
Listen and ch	oose the corre	ect answer from a, b	o, c, or d. (Vocabulary)
A Eliston and		of a ma	angrove tree are
1. The a) stems	b) roots	c) leaves	angrove tree are thick
2. Fish and animal	s are b) dead	c) non-living	d) abstract
3. Stones and rock	s are		things.
a) living	b) non-livir	ng c) survive	d) trick
4. Many	, bees an	d other insects live	in mangrove forests
a) camels	b) bears	c) aogs	a) butterflies
5. Mangrove forests		the	e marine ecosystem
a) protect	b) kill	c) damage	d) destrov
6. The plants, anima	ils, and insect	ts with e	ach other to survive
a) kill	b) protect	c) fight	d) interact
7. Sara doesn't wait	because she	isn't a	person,
a) patience	b) patient	c) success	d) luck
8. There is so much		in the	Amazon rainforest.
a) beauty	b) beautiful	c) success	d) successful
<ol><li>Hany's exhibition w</li></ol>	as a great		,
a) success	) successful	c) patient	d) beautiful
10.	# * * * *	* ** ** *** * *** * * * * * * * * * * *	is also important.
a) Lucky b	) Luck	c) Patient	d) Successful
11.			ay from our heart.
a) Veins b	Arteries	c) Blood	d) Muscles
12. We can get vitamin			w) Wassiss
a) sunlight b)	moonlight	c) water	d) blood
13. It's important to keep  a) healthy  b)			
14. We need	unhealthy	c) weak	d) slow
a) nutrients . b)	carbon	and oxy	gen in our blood.
The same and the s	odi DOU	C) nan	d) air
6 Unit (1) Life in my world	Hel	P your child deal with and	

## Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Grammar)

4.	This is a lizard		lives in	the Egyptian desert.	
	a) which	b) where	c) who	d) when	
2.	This is a medicina	al plant	helps	people with coughs.	
	a) who	b) where	c) when	d) which	
3.	This is wadi			different animals live.	
	a) where	b) when	c) which	d) who	
4.	This is a person			lives in Cairo.	
	a) which	b) who	c) where	d) when	
5.	This is Ali			lives in Giza.	
	a) who	b) which	c) where	d) when	
6.	This is a place	E0 E0017ED ***** NY		it sometimes snows.	
	a) where	b) who	c) when	d) what	
7.	The Sinai Penins	ula is a place		red foxes live.	
	a) who	b) when	c) what	d) where	
8.	Is Mona the girl		always draw	s pictures of animals?	
	a) when	b) which	c) where	d) who	
9.	I don't play baske	etball,		<ul> <li>I play football.</li> </ul>	
	a) so	b) and	c) but	d) because	
10.	I'm going to the s	ports center	it's basketball club today.		
	a) because	b) but	c) so	d) and	
11.				doesn't go to school.	
	a) who				
12.			•	l love tennis, too.	
	a) but				
13.	He wants to be h			he plays a lot of sports.	
	a) but	b) because	c) and,		
14.	Ali eats a healthy	•		he exercises every day	
	a) but			e d) and	
	W/ DOIL	<b>5</b> / <b>3</b> 0	<b>7</b> 5556435	u) and	

- 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences
- 1. does your How beat often heart ?
- 2. says that the people The dugong back are .
- 3. you aunt my Do know lives who Alex in ?
- 4. lives the What mangrove forests in ?
- 6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

How to keep healthy

Guiding elements:

(healthy - fruit - vegetables - exercise - unhealthy - chocolate - relax)

Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Our heart

Guiding elements:

(beats - keep - exercise - minerals - oxygen)



## Look around you

#### Vocabulary

valley	crater وادى	فوهة بركان
canyon	dunes واد صيق - منجدر	کثبان (رملیة)
wetlands	erode اراصي رطية - مستنقعات	ينجب - يفنت
erupt	storm-chaser يثور	متنبع المواصف
hurricane	thunderstorm	عاصفة عسة
flood	dust storm فيصان	عاصعة ترابية
photographer	mountain مصور فونوعر ق	حىل
coast	grassland .	ارض عشبية
excited	man-made سدور متعمس	من صمع الإنسان
archaeologist	ruins عائم آثار	أطلال
century	columns قرن (۱۰۰ عام)	أعمدة
lava	soil حمم بركانية	تربة زراعية
mud flow	ash تدفق الطين	رماد
•	diary قوس	يوميات / مفكرة
arch . *	flame يشعل داشعل	لهب - شعلة
light - lit pilot	hot air balloon	منطاد هوابي
ribbon	شريط	

#### **Natural Wonders**

The Sahara Desert

Mount Kilimanjaro الصحواء الكبري

Victoria Falls

Ngorongoro Crater شلاك فيكتورب

## Present Perfect Tense زمن المضارع التام

Form,

Subject + have / has + P.P

e.g. I've played tennis.

e.g. She has eaten pizza.

**Negative** 

Subject + haven't / hasn't + P.P

e.g. We haven't studied French.

e.g. He hasn't slept early.

Question

Yes. No question Have / Has + subject + P.P .....?

e.g. Have you bought a TV?

e.g. Has he ridden a bike?

Wh-question

Q.W + have / has + subject + P.P ....?

e.g., Where have you been?

- I've been to Luxor.

Keywords

just

I've just met my teacher.

ever

Have you ever seen a lion?

never

No, I've never seen a lion.

already

She's already fed the hens.

She's fed the hens already.

. . . . . and leopards.

1	Lis	ten a	nd choo	se the corre	ect answer from	a, b, c, or d.	
	The a) A The N	c sian Jaoroi	ontinent b) naoro C	t has the mo European rater is in	st famous natural c) Australian	wonders in the world) African	d.
	a) C	airo	b)	London	c) Tanzania	d) America	70
3.	The		fo	rmed when	a volcano erupteo	d millions of years ag	go.
					c) cubs	square kilomete	ers.
4.			is abou		c) 620	d) 640	
	-				-		
ĸ	LE	sten a	ina cno	ose the con	rect answer from		
1.	Rain	wodi			is one of the larg	est arches in the wo	orld.
	a) E	3ridge		b) River	c) Lake	d) Sea	
2.	ît's a	also .				million years	old.
		20		<b>b)</b> 200	c) 2000	d) 20000	
3.	It's 8			s Villada	المدا	d) doon	
4		ong		b) wide	c) tall	d) deep	esert.
4.	It's i	small	•	b) cool	c) cold	d) hot	.361 (.
	- '			,		•	
•	e n	eau a	na com	piete tile di	alog with words	from the box.	
			big-b	uffaloes -	reading - Tanza	ania - ants	
S	ama	:	What a	re you doing			
T	oka	1 1	I'm 1)			k about natural won	ders.
C	ama				rater is one of the	em.	
	oka		It's in 2	ch country is	o II f		
	ama		How 3	*	p		io iti
	oka				are kilometers.		15 11
	Sama			ere any ani			

Yes, there are many big animals like elephants.

Toka

d) America

d) sport

d) limestone

## Read and complete the text with words from the box.

## eroded - noise - River - canyon - Sea

The Victoria Falls are an enormous waterfall on the Zambezi . Every minute, 5 million cubic meters of water falls into which the water has 3) . The a big \_ . as it falls. water makes a lot of 4)

## 3 Read the following text then answer the questions.

The Pinnacles are one of the most unusual geological formations in Western Australia. They are a group of tall white rocks in the Nambung National Park. The Pinnacles are 25,000 to 30,000 years old. They are made of white limestone. The tallest columns are between three and five meters high. The best time of day to see them is in the early morning or late afternoon. The best time of year to see them is between August and October when the desert is full of beautiful wild flowers! You can drive there from the city of Perth in two hours.

## A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1.	The	Pinnacles a	are u	nusual	Geological	formati-		
8	a)	Australia	1.3	4.4	googlear	nonnation	m	Western

a) Australia b) Africa c) Europe

2. The underlined word "August" is a

a) day

b) season c) month

3. The Pinnacles are made of white

a) wood b) metal c) plastic

B) Answer the following questions.

4. How old are the Pinnacles?

11

3. How high are the tallest columns?

12 Unit (2) Look around you

Help vous

## 4 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Vocabulary)

1.	The Ngorongoro	Crater is the larg	gest	crater in the world-
	a) canyon	b) valley	c) volcanic	d) dune
2.			re are forests and	· ·
		b) wetlands		d) dunes
3.	The Sahara Des	ert covers		countries.
	a) eight	b) nine	c) eleven	d) SIX
4.	The Sahara Des	ert is very		
	a) cold	b) warm	c) snowy	d) hot
5.	Water has chang	ged the		of Victoria Walls.
	a) place	b) shape	c) color	d) crater
6.	The	is a l	nill made of sand	shaped by the wind.
	a) dune	b) valley	c) canyon	wetland
7.	То	is to change o	r destroy by rain.	wind or the sea, etc.
	a) erode	b) erupt	c) snow	d) rain
8.	The	is an area	of land that is off	ten covered by water.
	a) dune	b) valley	c) wetland	i) canyon
9.	When volcanoe	S	, fire and rocks	s come out of the top.
	a) erode	b) erupt	c) erose	d) make
10	•	is the top	part of the Earth	in which plants grow.
	a) Stem		c) Soil	
11				mes out of volcanoes.
	a) Soil	b) Ash	c) Mud flow	
12	. A	is soft we		oves down mountains.
	a) mud flow	b) soil	c) ash	d) lava
13	. A	•	•	soft piece of material.
	a) flame	b) ribbon	c) basket	
14	. People use a	)	C) Dasket	d) light
	a) flame	b) basket	ما جامان	to carry things.
	7 1101110	u) basket	c) ribbon	d) light

		answer from a, b,	c, or d. (Gramm
- Listen and C	hoose the correct	41131101	c, or d. (Grammar)
1 Waleed has a) travel	o) traveled	c) travels	d) traveling a famous person
<ul><li>2. Aya has never</li><li>a) met</li><li>3. Amir and Fare</li></ul>	p) meer	c) meets	tennis beto-
a) hasn't playe	ed b) has playe	ed c) haven't pla Fares ev	yed d) playing rer traveled by train?
a) Has	b) is	c) Have	d) Are
5. Have Youssef a		4	an elephanto
a) see	b) saw	c) seen	d) sees
6. Has Mom		made fesikh fo	or Sham El-Nessim?
a) ever	b) never	c) just	d) already
7. Have they ever	www. wd0.ex.00000		another country?
a) visit	<ul><li>b) visited</li></ul>	c) visiting	d) visits
8. Have you.		* * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * *	saydeya?
a) eats	b) ate	c) eaten	d) eating
9. Has Kamai	k ess		to the desert?
a) be	b) been	c) being	d) to be
10. Was Kamal fright	tened when he		his first hurricane?
a) see	b) saw	c) seen	d) sees
110	the t	first prize for photo	ographers aged 10.
won	have won	Winnin	win
2. Have you ever se	en a volcano? -	Yes.	
<ul><li>a) I have</li><li>3. Kamal has</li></ul>	b) I haven't	have I	ij have you
a) tools	a pno	to of many extrem	ne weather events.
<ul><li>1) took</li><li>14 Kamal has</li></ul>	b) taken	c) takes	
			taking aituation
a peen never	never been	in a da	angerous situation.
4 Unit (2) Look around yo	u µ	over been	d) be
	***	elp your child deal with su	ch questions.

#### Final Revision

#### Put the words in the correct order to make sentences

- 1. continent The African place an amazing is
- you Have traveled a ship on ?
- this story I have told you already .
- special What about the Java of Island ?
  - Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about: 6

#### The Sahara Desert

#### **Guiding elements:**

(natural - wonders - largest - eleven countries - sand dunes)

Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Man-made wonders of Africa

#### **Guiding elements:**

(incredible - Egypt - the Pyramids - The Sphinx - visit)

## Unit (3)

## How we use our world

#### Natural resources موادد طبیعیه

coal	طع date	بلح	economy	الاقتصاد
fertile	flax خصبة	نبات الكتان	mine	منجم
mud	pale طین	شاحب اللون	renewable	متجدد
raw materials	linen مودخم	قماش الكتان	non-renewable	غبر متجدد

#### States of water

عالات الماء

liquid	سانل	solid	صلب	gas	غاز
boil	يفلى	freeze	يتجمد	melt	يذوب
fixed shape	شكل ثابت		*	1	

#### حصانص فبريانية Physical properties

bend	hard يطوي	mass جامد صلب	الكتلة
odor	rough رانحة	soft خشن	ناعم .
sticky	texture     texture	نسيج / ملمس	

#### Stories -

dıg	flamingo يحمر	hole طائر الفلامنجو	حفرة
sink	shovel يفطس/يغوص	tunnel ، جاروف	نفق
skeleton	expert هيكل عظمي	blind خبير	أعمى

#### **Final Revision**

#### First Conditional

Form: If + present simple, will + inf.

#### Usage: 'We use the first conditional:

⇒ To describe events which will probably happen in the future.

e.g. If we to the museum, we will see dinosaur bones.

#### Second Conditional

Form: If + past simple , would - inf.

#### *Usage:* We use the second conditional:

⇒ To describe events we imagine, but probably won't happen.

e.g. If it in October, I very surprised.

#### Reported speech

#### Direct speech

الكلام المباشر

The words that a person says

e.g. Seleem said, "I like reading comics."

#### Reported speech

الكلام الغير المياشر (الكلام المنقول)

To report what a person said

e.g. Seleem said he liked reading comics.

#### Notice the changes

لاحظ التفييرات

e.g. Fareeda said, "I can play tennis."

Fareeda said she could play tennis."

- Ohange the subject according to the speaker.
- Ohange the verb from present to past.
- We don't use speech marks.

Help your child revise unit (3).

A-BAHER ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة الثالثة

Al-BAHER - Connect Plus (5) - First Term 17

# **General Activities**

1 Liston and	choose the corr	ect answer from	a, b, c, or d.
1. People kept	b) bees	to make no	oney in ancient Egyp d) chickens
<ul><li>a) sour</li><li>3. They used hor</li></ul>	b) sweet ney as a	c) sugary	d) bad
<ul><li>a) medicine</li><li>4. They put bees</li><li>a) knives</li></ul>	in a house calle	c) clay d c) lives	<ul><li>d) mud</li><li>d) wives</li></ul>
- Listen and	choose the corr	ect answer from	
<ol><li>They took mu</li></ol>	b) stones d from the	c) glass	to build houses d) sand
<ul><li>a) Desert</li><li>3. People used</li><li>a) Circle</li></ul>	mud and made i		d) Sea bricks
<ul><li>4. These bricks</li><li>a) soft</li></ul>	were b) cool	c) square and strong ( c) easy log with words fro	<ul><li>d) rectangle</li><li>when they were dried</li><li>d) hard</li></ul>
in	oportant - cotto	S and words 110	m the box.
Nada : The Noha Why Nada : The	did people use	to make linen?	gold
Nada : Yes. Noha : Is yo Nada : No.	it was.  Our dress made of	** ***	?
18 Unit (3) How we L	ise our world	Helpira	
		Help your child deal wi	th such question
i.			duestions.

Final Hevision	

#### Read and complete the text with words from the box.

#### Delta - fresh - countries - medicine - desert

Salt was a very important resource in ancient Egypt. Ancient Egyptians sold it to other 1), too. People used it to keep food 2). It was also useful in 3) and agriculture. Some of the lakes in the Nile had lots of salt which people could take to use or sell.

### 3 Read the following text then answer the questions.

Last week, our class went on a trip to the waterfalls at Wadi El Rayan. It was beautiful! There are two lakes there: One at the top of the waterfalls and one at the bottom. The waterfalls are 67 meters high, so the sound of water falling is very loud. We couldn't hear our teacher talking very well! We learned that the water comes from an oasis in the desert. The water travels eight kilometers from the oasis to the lake through a tunnel.

#### A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1. Our class went on a trip to the waterfalls of Wadi El
  - a) Rayan
- b) Degla
- c) Melook
- d) Kings
- 2. The opposite of the underlined word "top" is
  - a) high

The waterfalls are

- b) bottom
- c) fast

- d) behind meters high.
- a) seventy-six b) sixty-seven c) ninety-seven
- d) seventy-nine

- B) Answer the following questions.
- 4. Where does water come from?
- 5. How many lakes are there in Wadi El Rayan?

## Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Vocabulary)

							Sources
1.	The sun and water	are	. I. I.a	A	old	d)	new
	a) non-renewable	<b>b</b> )	renewable	CJ	UIG W		ns into steam
2.	If you				***	_	
	a) cool	b)	freeze	c)	boil		drink
3.	lf you				•	water, it	turns into ice
		b)	heat	c)	boil	d)	freeze
Δ	To dig a hole in the			ea			
			pot	c)	shádow	d)	shovel
5	They made linen for	-	**				
٥.	a) gold		wood	c)	flax	d)	metal
6.	a) gold	U)		-,		is	easy to bend.
٥.	a) Gold	ы	Copper	(2)	Iron •		Supper .
7		U	ooppo.	٠,			as a medicine.
1.	Egyptians used	٤١	water	۱.	honov		milk
_					honey	u)	TIMOX
8.							
	a) papyrus	_		c)	flax		gold
9.	People in ancient						build houses.
	a) gold	b)	coal	c)	mud		salt
10.	Α	*** * *				pei	rson can't see.
	a) deaf	b)	blind	c)	dumb	d)	funny
11.	The old cheese ha	as a	bad				
	a) mass	b)	odor	c)	rough	d)	texture
12	The glue is thick a	ınd					
	a) rough	b)	hard	c)	sticky	d)	difficult
13.	Ice is a		4				
	a) gas	b)	liquid	c)	solid	d)	steam
14	Today, we're going	to to				a scienc	e experiment
	a) make	b)	do	c)	play		eat
20	Unit (3) How we use ou	r Wol	rid H		our child deal y	uith arrah arra	etlans
20	Viiii (2)					عل هذه الأسئلة	م عد ضعفك أن يتعامل مع م

## Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Grammar)

1.	If I visited the mus	eun	n, I			be happy.
	a) will	b)	would	c)	can	d) may
2.	If I		a famous	oers	son, I wo	uldn't know what to say.
	a) meet	b)	met	c)	meets	d) meeting
3.	If I have enough m	one	ey, I			buý a car.
	a) will	b)	would	c)	could	d) might
4.	If I C	airc	, I would go to	o th	e Egyptia	an Geological Museum.
	a) visit	b)	visits	c)	visited	d) visiting
<b>5</b> .	If I		in a hot	air	balloon,	wouldn't be frightened.
	a) fly	b)	flies	c)·	flew	d) flying
6.	If it				hot ou	itside, I wouldn't go out.
	a) is	b)				d) am
7.	If we go to the mu	seu	m, we			see dinosaur bones.
	a) would ,	b)	could	c)	will	d) might
8.	If you put a stone	on 1	water, it will			*
	a) sink	b)	sinks	c)	sank'	d) sinking
9.	Omar said he					reading comics.
	a) like	b)	likes	c)	liked	d) liking
10.	Soha said she usu	ually	/			fruit for breakfast.
	a) have	b)	has	c)	had	d) having
11.	Amira said she					play the guitar.
	a) could	b)	can -	c)	may	d) will
12.	Adel said he				*****************	walk to school.
		b)	would	c)	may	d) can
13	Waleed said he				_	going to play tennis.
	a) is	_	are		am	d) was
14	Mona said she	6.		_		to the park.
	a) go	b)	went	c)	goes	d) going
M-1.			b			

Help your child deal with such questions.

# 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences

- 1. Wael's is Which favorite bird ?
- 2. as honey People a medicine used .
- 3. make used People linen clothes to .
- 4. old has The cheese a bad odor .
  - 6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

#### Mud

#### **Guiding questions:**

- 1. Who used it?
- 2. What did they use it for?
- 3. Where did they take it?
- 4. What did they make from it?
- 5. Was it important?
  - Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Wadi El Rayan Waterfalls

**Guiding elements:** 

( trip - two lakes - 67 meters high - loud )

تعتان أداد بمعامل محملل هذه الاسماء



### We're on the move

#### Vocabulary

pedal	پڏال	skateboard	لوح نزلج
brakes	فرامل	physics	فيزياء
wheel	عجلة	builder	عامل بناء
speed	سرعة	inventor	مخترع
push force	قوة الدفع	feathers	ريش
pullforce	قوة السحب	land .	يهبط
friction	احتكاك	hurt	يودي .
space	فضاء	invent	يخترع
tension	ضغط	fallover	يفع - يسقط
air resistance	مقاومة الهواء	tires	اطارات
gravity	جاذبية	rope	حبن
dart	سهم	hook -	حطاف
paper airplane	طائرة ورقية	fold	يثني
vertically	عموديا	turn over	يفنب
crease	يصعط / يجعد	ground	الارص
glider	طابرة شراعية	desert	صحراء
tip	طرف	float	يطعو
astronaut	رائد فضاء	interested in	مهتم ب
normal	طبيعي	planet	كوكب
special	حاص / مميز	Mars	المريخ
tour	جولة	company	شركة
stadium	استاد	project	مشروع
engineer	ميد عدس	solve	يحل
pilot	طيار	Specific (107)	40.0
trampoline	نطاطة	al offico (d) o	مندسة معمارية
parachute	باراشوت	architect	مهند <mark>س معماري</mark>



It has two parts.

ينكون مر جزيين،

a sentence , question tag?

#### Usage -

We use it to check or confirm information.

نستخدم السؤال المذيل للتحقق من المعلومات أو تكيدها

#### **Form**

The question tag is formed of:

پ<mark>یکون کیے انجال مر</mark>

helping verb / modal verb + subject pronoun?

فعل مساعد

فعل ناقص

ضمير فاعل

#### Notes

- positive sentence, negative tag?
- e.g. You live in Egypt, don't you?
- negative sentence, positive tag?
  - e.g. Ali didn't go home, did he?
- We use a comma before the question tag.
  - e.g. He has played football, hasn't he?

24 Unit (4) We're on the move

Help your child revise unit (4).

<sup>ساعد</sup> طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة الرابعة.

## **General Activities**

(1	) L	iste	en and cho	ose	tne correct	ans	wer from	a, b, t,	or u.	
4	Am	al is	s interested	in t	the stars and	ł			>121F## 844	
1.	a)	olai	nts	b)	planets	င)	leaves	d)	roots	
2	It is		.,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,					to study	other planets	3.
	a)	use	less	<b>b</b> }	important	c)	bad	a)	ugry	
3.	Úno	ders	standing pla	anet	s might help	us s	solve som	e of Ear	th's	
	2)	aro	unds .	b)	floors	cì	cycles	d)	problems	
4.	It lo	oks	<b>3</b>	40.0040		,		living	without gravity boring	Į.
	a)	sac	i	b)	bad	c)	fun	<b>d</b> }	boring	
10	Vi.	iste	en and cho	ose	the correct	ans	wer from	a, b, c,	or d.	
1.					ā			41	dontiet	٠
					doctor				denust	
2.	Kai	rim	went to an	airp	lane festival	WITT	mum and	<i>ا</i> لا د	eieter	٠
^					dad	U)	Dioniei	uj	313101	
٥.			aw lots of o		cars	c)	planes	d)	buses	
4					g around in		pidiroc			
	a)	sai	uare	b)	place	c)	club	d)	circle	
-								om tha h	O.Y.	
4		(eac	and comp	iete	the dialog	AATER	WOIUS II	m the t	OA.	
			fle	oat	- sun - stars	s-fa	II - impo	rtant		
An	as		What does	gra	avity do?					
Se	elf	*	It makes th	nıng	s 1)		** * *** **		to the ground.	
An	as	:	What will h	napį	en if there is	s no	gravity?			
Se	eif	:	People wil	12)	,	. 11 -	. ((++ ^)+ ++ ++		in the air.	
Ar	nas		What does	gra	avity do to th	e pla	anets?			
Se	eif		It keeps th	e pl	anets movin	g ar	ound the	3)		
Ar	nas		So gravity	is 4	j)			* * *** *** 1	to the earth.	•
Se	eif		You are no	int.						

## Read and complete the text with words from the how.

## clocks-telling-years-scientist-sav

People around the world invented water clocks. They were the best for the 1 net not ectly. In 1656 a 2)

the first note of These new to became the pest way to tell the time for the clocks were very important for many at

#### 

Short vanted to be an engineer when he was 10 via a divided a rays watched Triprograms about robots, and he loved a arrang things. We have the rate of the tailed helping a robot pesign company on the. He did is some carbo day and in the evening he worked on his own term.

To the solve problems. He also found English very uspital as if helps him to contain the access the world. He is now learning the esergic can talk to among a linear now.

### A) Choose me correctars wer from a. b. c or d

Sherif of rich feloring a design company online.

The converse con "rafe sito Sign Company online.

Fronti Japanese ... 10

When did he do his school work?

What did he want to be when he was 10 years old?

le	tire a and thee.	of the current auxilia	to a b c.:	d (Nocabular)
ad.				
1.	Judy wants to fly			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
	at astronaut	b) engineer	c) pilot	a) architect
2	Adam likes studyl	ng the planets. He	wants to be allar	
	a) astronaut	b) teacher	c; farmer	a) doctor
	All would like to he			
		gardener	engineer	astronaut
Ĺ	You can use			top or slow down.
	a) brakes	b) pedals	c) seats	g wheels
5.	You use a		force to jump	on a trampoline
	a) push	b) puil	c) air	d) resistance
6.	Abbas Ibn Firnas	was a/an		
	c\ engineer	b) architect	c) inventor	d; pilot
7.	When you open th	ne fridge door, you	are using a	torce
	a: push	b) gravity	c) pull	c) resistance
3	He made two			him fly like a bird.
	a) wings	b) feathers	c) beaks	d) Lgs
9.	End your email wi			
	a) See you soon		c) Hello	a) Welcome
10.	Begin your email	with		
	By for now	n. See you soon	Hi	Welcome
11.	the is interested			wable resources
	a) at	b) on	o) in	Gira,
12.	A person who wor	rks in space is calle	ed a/ar	-
	architect	b) astronaut	1) teacher	. doctor
$\{U_{\tilde{\eta}}$	betwe	een the bike tyres a	and the road stop	s you from falling.
		Gravity		Spring force
14.	To increase the s		ou must	
	the bedals more of		29.4 4.75%	d) jump
	a) push	b) pull	c) att	200 / 17.1 x 16.1

help your child deal with such questions

### Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Grammar) (4) vionce museum today

The children visited the science	ce museum today,	
فالمرام المراب ا	a) do	d) don't they?
2 People see s	some interesting th	nings there on
a) can b) will	c) are	d) don't "ey? nings there,can't they? d) can't
3. Their teacher won't give them		
a) can't b) didn't	c) will	a) do he?
4. The science museum	far fron	n the city center, is it?
a) is b) isn't	c) can	d) can't
5. Khaled's sister is 12 years old,	· ·	a) can
a) won't b) don't	c) can't	d) isn't
6. Mr Hassan doesn't drive cars.		u) isii(
a) is b) can	c) does	he?
7 I'll be in your class next year,		d) will
a) am b) do	c) can't	······································
8. Rania		d) won't
a) can b) can't		the guitar, can't she?
9. We won't be late,	c) will	d) won't
a) do b) are	***************************************	we?
10. Eman didn't go to the park,	c) can	d) will
a) is b) can		she?
11. There isn't any coffee in the cup	c) will	d) did
a) did b) doos	board,	there?
12. She	c) is	d) can
a) icn's	tell me	e her name, did she?
		d) won't
13. You will send Grandpa an email		you?
We can make it	c) can't	d) mustn't
a) won't	7	we?
b) don't	C) Can't	
8 Unit (4) We're on the man	c) can't	d) alan't

28

Help your child deal with such questions.

ماعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مش هذه الأسئلة.

#### **Final Revision**

### 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences

- 1. some to talk I my friends had time to -.
- 2. a great was Abbas Ibn Firnas inventor .
- 3. air The into children up the flew -.
- 4. gravity there space Is in ?
  - 6 Write an email of FIFTY (50) words.

To your friend Safia about your future job. Your name is Anas.

'Guiding elements:

(teacher - interesting - children - hard - school)

Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Gravity

**Guiding elements:** 

(fall - force - float - air - planets - moving)

## (1) محافظة القليوبية

A 11 1	shoose the	correct	answer	trom	a,	υ, τ	, or	a,
	ARABITEM LITE							

٠	Rainforests are characterized by			climatic conditions throughout the year				
1.	Rainforests are cha	Macremsed by						
	a) cold	b) snowy		warm	*	stormy		
2.	The average temp	perature	the	re ranges from	1/2	to 93 degrees		
	Fahrenheit. a) recorded	b) played	c)	needed	d)	weeded		
3.	Rainforests are	4 ******** * **		,,,,,,		. the equator.		
	a) far	b) near	· c)	south	d)	north		
4.	A huge		of ar	nimals can live	in t	he rainforests.		
	a) variety	b) possibility	c)	probability	d)	ability		
2	Read and com	plete the text	with '	words from th	ie b	OK.		

## waterfalls - sand - made - Nile - making

The valley of Wadi El-Rayan is an area of 1759 km<sup>2</sup>. It is located about 65 km southwest of Fayum city and 80 km west of the

about 65 km southwest of Fayum city and 80 km west of the	
1)	River.
The Wadi has been used for man- 2)	lakes from
agricultural drainage which has made a reserve of the two sep	arate Wadi
El Rayan Lakes. Among the springs, there are three sulphur s	
extensive mobile 3) dunes	S.
Wadi El Rayan waterfalls are considered to be the largest 4)	in Egypt.



### 3 Read the following text then answer the questions.

A body system is a collection of parts able to work together to serve a common purpose - growth, reproduction and survival. Each part of a system depends on the other parts to perform tasks that can't be achieved by single parts acting alone. Our bodies are made up of countless cells all requiring oxygen to carry out the important process of respiration. In this process cells use oxygen gas and produce carbon dioxide gas - a waste product that must be removed from the body. The process of breathing allows these gases to be exchanged between the blood and lungs.

#### A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1. The underlined words "able to" mean
  - a) can
- b) can't
- c) must
- d) mustn't

2. Our bodies are made up of

cells.

- a) counted
- b) countless
- c) few
- d) no

Cells use

gas and produce carbon dioxide.

- oxygen
- b) carbon dioxide c) oil
- d) petrol

- B) Answer the following questions.
- 4. Why do parts of the body work together?
- 5. Where can oxygen and carbon dioxide gases be exchanged?



#### Read and writeT (True) or F (False).

- 1. Jubari drank a lot of salty water.
- 2. Wadi El Gemal is Wadi of the Camels.
- Dugongs eat leaves from mangrove trees.
- 4. The beach was too sandy.

## Complete the following sentences:

- 1. Jubari's mother showed him which.
- 2. Ras Hankorab beach was a place for

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- look right and left before crossing the road 1. You a) must b) mustn't 2
- d) won't
- finished my homework yet. a) won't b) hasn't c) don't d) haven't

c) go

- Karma didn't a) went
- to the park yesterday.

- b) goes If I had enough money, I
  - a) will b) would
- d) going buy a new car. c) have d) has
- Hazem is Adam's cousin

- lives in the Sinai Peninsula.
- a) who b) which
- c) where d) when Fares ever traveled by train?

a) Does

6.

- b) Has
- c) Have d) Will
- Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.
- 1. dangerous is warming for Global the Earth .
- the tallest mountain in is Africa Mount Kilimanjaro .
- beauty rainforest There's in the so much Amazon .
  - 7 . Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

### Natural resources

#### Guiding words:

(renewable - sun - soil - nature - solar energy - non-renewable - fossil fuels - coal)

Final Revision - Exams

Help your child deal with such questions.

سعد طفيك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1. Nabq is a very big national park in South
  - a) Africa
- b) America
- c) Sinai
- d) pole

- 2. Along the coast, there is a mangrove
  - a) forest
- b) animal
- c) fire
- d) food

3. Mangrove trees can grow in the

water.

- a) sugar
- b) juicy
- c) milky
- d) salt

- 4. Mangrove trees have amazing
  - a) boots
- b) roots
- c) stems
- d) leaves

#### 2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

#### more-regularly-cycle-important-sleep

Your heart beats over 100.000 times a day! So it is 1)

keep your heart healthy. When you walk, run, swim, or 2)

you make your heart work harder. If you exercise 3)

your heart works better and you can get the minerals, nutrients, and oxygen

you need 4)

easily.

#### 3 Read the following text then answer the questions.

The Amazon Rainforest is the world's largest tropical rainforest. It covers an area of nearly 2.8 million square miles, which is about the size of the continent of Australia. The Amazon Rainforest gets its life from the majestic Amazon River, the world's second largest river, which runs directly through the heart of the region. There is a clear link between the health of the Amazon and the health of the planet. The rainforests help the local and global climate. Deforestation releases significant amounts of carbon, which has negative results around the world.

A Address of the Land	4.0	arrest ans	wer from a,	o, c or u.		
A) Ch	oose the c	Orrect aria	wer from a,			*** ***********************************
1. Th	e main idea	of the pas	sage is the	c) Thames	path d)	Seine D
				0,		HIVO!
2. The	e word "ne	gative" me	ans not	Visitalothyo	a)	da.
a)	positive	b) transit	rive	c) initiative	u)	detective
3. Def	orestation i	releases si	gnificant am	ount of		
	oxygen	b) nitroge		c) carbon	d)	oil
_	wer the fol	_				
			tropical rain	forest?		
5. How	does the Ar	mazon Rai	nforest get it	s life?		
			+			
		4	The Rec	ider		
A Rea	ad and wi	rite T (Tru	e) or F (Fals	se).		
1. Juba	ri is a dorca	as gazelle.				
2. Jubar	i was very	weak.				
3. Preda	ators are da	angerous a	inimals.			
4. Acacia	a trees give	gazelles	candies.			
B Cor	mplete th	e followi	ng senten	ces:		7
			ubari followe			
			wadi of the	- 1110		
(5) Cho	oose the co	Offect and	work	b, c, or d.		
1 11111		oricet alla	wer from a,	b, c, or d.		
1. We le	earned abo	ut the area	C +11 5417 41 41			we live.
a) wi		b) that	c)	where	ا الألم	
	e goes to t	he pool	-,		d) w	
a) so		b) but	(2)	and S		s swimming.
-	The state of the s	-	<b>c)</b>	ai i (j	d) be	ecause

34, Final Revision - Exams

Help your child deal with such questions.

ماعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الإسئلة.

#### **Final Revision**

2	He has lived here	<b>.</b>		twenty years.				
3.	a) for	b) since	c) ago	d) in				
4.	She hasn't arrive		, 0					
	a) just	b) yet	c) never	d) ever				
5.	If I	a lot of	money, I'd build a	a home for animals.				
	a) have	b) had	c) has	d) having				
6.	The children visit	ted the science r	nuseum,	they?				
	a) don't	b) didn't	c) doesn't	d) aren't				
6	Put the words	in the correct (	order to make se	ntences.				
1.	a garden - who -	a man - met - W	e - works in					
2.	a ship - travelle	d - ever - you - o	n - <u>Have</u> - ?					
3.	parents - Kama	<u>l's</u> - are - chase	ers - storm					
7	Write a text of	of FIFTY (50) w	ords about:					
	A job you would like to do in the future							
Gı	iiding words:							
	(doctor - help - s	ick - examine -	patients - give- i	medicine - work -				
	h	ospital - travel	- abroad - charit	y)				

## (3) إدارة إدكو

## Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

	-			
1.	Jana would love		) incor	d) • doctor
	a) vet	b) teacher	c) engineer	· ·
2.	You need to unde	erstand		to be an engineer,
	a) music	b) science	c) maths	d) art
3.	An engineer's jet	Sounds really		
	-a) interesting	b) terrible	c) boring	d) bad
4.	Engineers make	things such as s	kateboards and	
	a) roads	b) windows	c) tables	d) chairs

### Read and complete the text with words from the box.

#### fish - hives - medicine - sweet - Honey

People keep bees to make honey in ancient Egypt. 1) an expensive but an important natural resource. People used it to make food taste 2) They used honey as a 3) too. If you cut yourself, you could put honey on the cut. People made long, round houses out of clay for the bees. Then they put the clay bee houses called 4) ,on top of each other.

### Read the following text then answer the questions.

Adel is a carpenter. He has a big workshop. He gets up at six o'clock in the morning. He has breakfast with his family. Then, he goes to his workshop. He makes tables and chairs. He likes his job. Adel has two daughters and a son. His son is older than his daughters. On Friday, he doesn't go to work. He likes watching TV with his family. Mr Adel is very kind and helpful. All people like him and respect him.

#### **Final Revision**

A) Choose th	e correct answer	from :	a, <b>b</b> , c	or d.
--------------	------------------	--------	-----------------	-------

- 1. Adel has ..... daughters.
  - a) one b) two
- 2. A carpenter can make
  - a) bread b) chairs
- c) pizza

c) three

d) cows

d) no

- 3. Adel doesn't go to work on
  - a) Saturday b) Friday
- c) Sunday
- d) Monday

- B) Answer the following questions.
- 4. What is Adel's job?
- 5. When does Adel get up?

#### 4 The Reader

#### A Read and write (frue) or f (False).

- 1. Jubari was brave and curious.
- 2. The mangroves were too sweet.
- 3. Wadi el Gemal isn't the perfect place for gazelles.
- 4. Jubari was born in Wadi el Gemal.

#### **B** Complete the following sentences:

- 1. Subira was Jubari's
- 2. The sea water was very

#### 5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d

I have a friend

is very good at tennis.

- a) which
- b) when
- c) who
- d) where

2. Fish, chicken

beans are all healthy food.

- a) because
- b) so
- c) and
- d) but

Help your child deal with such questions.

Al-BAHER - Connect Plus (5) - First Term 37

-					
-	30	-	-	_	
	ж.	а	n	٦.	1
	-	-			×

fish soup?

- 3. Have you
  - a) eat
- b) eaten
- c) eats
- d) eating ..... dinosaur bones

- If we go to the museum, we will
  - a) sees
- b) see
- c) saw
- d) seen ... to Greece last year.

- 5. 1
  - a) travel
- b) will travel c) travels
- d) traveled

- 6. This bird can fly,
  - a) can
- b) can't
- c) will
- d) won't
- 6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.
- hens She the fed already has .
- , Hany Where you yesterday go did ?
- the rain for We wait must .
  - Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

#### A school trip

#### Guiding words:

(Last week - went - museum - friends - bus - took photos- nice time - came back - happy)

#### Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1.	Nabq is a very			in South Sinai.		
	a) mark	b) park	c) dark	d)	garden	

- 2. Heba learnt that the mangrove trees can grow in
- d) polluted water b) fresh water c) salt water a) dirty water the living things and the non-living things 3. The mangrove trees in the marine ecosystem.
  - d) damage c) eat a) protect b) destroy
- to Nabq. 4. Last week, Heba went on a school
  - d) trip a) book b) bus c) gate

#### Read and complete the text with words from the box.

#### read - exercise - healthy - design - wonders

My teacher gave us some advice. He told us to eat 1) food and . He said we must protect the environment and man-made do 21 books to gain knowledge. . He also told us to 4) 3)

### Read the following text then answer the questions.

People have kept bees to make honey for a long time. In ancient Egypt, people kept them to make honey which was an expensive, but important natural resource. Most people liked honey because it could be used for many different things. People used it to make food taste sweet. They used it as a medicine, too. If you cut yourself, you could put some honey on the cut. Really, honey is one of the most important things that must be found in our houses because it has a lot of uses.

a) when b) where 2. I am ill, a) because b) but	I am goir	ng to see a doctor. d) as
a) when h) where	c) which	d) who
1. This is the house	c) which	[ ] live.
5 Choose the correct answer	from a, b, c, or d.	
. Jubari can't run in Ras Hankorab	beach because the sa	and is very
. Subira is Jubari's		
B Complete the following se	entences.	
4. Subira taught Jubari to stay awa	y from predators.	
3. Jubari was born in Wadi el Gerr	nal in the Eastern Des	ert.
2. The mangrove forest was too sa	lty for Jubari.	
Jubari wasn't very brave.		
A Read and write T (True) or	F (False).	
4 <u>Th</u>	e Reader	
5. How can you use honey as a m	edicine?	
4. Why did people like honey?		•
B) Answer the following question	ns.	
a) salty b) sweat  3. In fact, honey is very a) happy b) ugly	A SEC SHAPE STATE OF THE PARTY	d) funny
2. People used honey to make to	c) sour	d) sweet
a) honey b) bees	c) ancient Egyptians	d) medicine
A) Choose the correct answer from 1. The underlined word "them" n	a Am	

#### **Final Revision**

- 3. Have you
  - /er h) r

seen a snake?

some water?

as Nabil.

- a) ever
- b) never
- c) for
- d) since

4. Would you like

a) have

- b) to have c)
  - c) having
- d) had

5.

he is strong, he can't carry the box.

- a) Since
- b) Although
- c) Despite
- d) As

- Ahmed is as
   a) taller
- b) tallest
- c) the tallest
- d) tall
- 6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.
- 1. his friend He visiting is old .
- 2. It's to important a healthy have diet .
- 3. study you succeed If hard, will you -
- 7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Cotton

**Guiding words:** 

(grow - Nile Delta - clothes - good for - renewable)

## (5) إدارة بندر كفر الدوار

## Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

<ol> <li>Yosof wants to be</li> </ol>	a/an		al)		
a) doctor	b) astronaut	c) pilot	d) engineer		
2. People without	•	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	float all the time.		
a) stars	b) sun	c) water	d) gravity		
3. Yosof is interested	in the		and the planets.		
a) stars	b) sports	c) clothes	d) foods		
4.	help	us solve some of the	he Earth's problems.		
a) Rainbow	b) Walls	c) Clothes	d) Plants		
Read and complete the text with words from the box.					

#### liquid - solid - change - into - change

We can see the matter in three states. Solids, liquids and gases can
from one state to another. When you boil water, it turns
steam. If you freeze water, it becomes 3)
. When
ice gets warm, it melts and becomes 4)

Read the following text then answer the questions.

Parks are very important for us. People go to the parks to walk, relax and breathe fresh air. It's healthy and important for our hearts to do exercise and relax. In the parks, we find trees, flowers and grass where people can enjoy nice time. Children can find a safe place to play, run and laugh in front of the eyes of their parents. People can usually go to the parks on Fridays. They take food and drink with them. We should keep the parks clean. We should put litter in bins to keep them clean.

A) Choose the correct answe	r from a, b, c or d. r
<ul> <li>1. We</li> <li>a) should b) are</li> <li>2. It is</li> <li>a) dangerous b) unsa</li> <li>3. The underlined word "clear</li> <li>a) clear b) calm</li> </ul>	n" is the opposite of
B) Answer the following que 4. Why do people go to the pa 5. What can we find in the par	stions. rks?
A Read and write T (True	The Reader  or F (False).
<ol> <li>Seagrass grows under the</li> <li>Lake Nasser is a natural lake</li> <li>Jubari met the turtle first.</li> <li>The turtle laid its eggs in the</li> <li>Complete the following</li> </ol>	e. a sand.
<ol> <li>The sea water was very</li> <li>Subira showed Jubari where</li> <li>Choose the correct ans</li> </ol>	
<ol> <li>Ahmed played football</li> <li>a) and</li> <li>b) so</li> <li>This is the school</li> <li>a) who</li> <li>b) wh</li> </ol>	scored two goals.  c) but d) because i and my brothers learn.  ch c) where d) why

Final Revision

## Exams

d.
day
lava,
nard.
vork.
-,

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

My favorite job

Gurding words:

( work hard - study - wear - help - build )

## Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Youssef is on a vacation with his ....

a) friends b) family

c) brothers

d) cousins

2. Dahab is near the .....

a) Red Sea b) Sinai

c) Luxor

d) Cairo

3. The water in Dahab is so

a) cold

b) warm

c) hot

d) cool

... in the sea. 

a) diving

b) sailing c) swimming

d) fishing

### Read and complete the dialoge with words from the box.

#### bad - saw - interesting - go - Luxor

Sama

I went to 2) Rana

What did you see there? Sama

13) .... the Valley of the Kings. Rana

Was it 4) ..... ? Sama

Yes, it was very interesting. Rana

#### Read the following text then answer the questions. 3

My name's Amir. I'm eleven years old. I like English, but art is my favorite subject. I like painting in my free time. I live in Hurghade. My friends are Adel and Ali. Adel is eleven too, but Ali is twelve. Adel is very good at sports. He loves karate. He plays in a football team, too. Ali is good at languages. He speaks English very well. He often talks to his cousin in England.

A) O1	answer from a,	b, c or a.		
A) Choose the correct	answer			in England.
<ol> <li>Ali often talks to his</li> </ol>		c) brother	d)	grandfather
	) cousin			
2. Amir's favorite subje		c) Arabic	d)	math .
a) art b	music	_	- 1	
3. Adel is			_	years old. twelve
a) ten b)	eleven	c) nine	uj	
B) Answer the following				
4. What does Amir like of	doing in his free t	ime?		
5. Who are Amir's friend	ls?			
	The De	a al assi		
95	4 The Re	<u>aaer</u>		
A Read and write T	(True) or F (Fal	se).		
Jubari found the Wad				
2. Lake Nasser is a mar				
3. Wadi El Gemal isn't a		nazelles		
4. Subira taught Jubari v				-
				_ /
B Complete the fol	lowing senter	ices.		
<ol> <li>Jubari learned to run a</li> </ol>				
<ol><li>Jubari couldn't drink th</li></ol>	ie sea water bec	ause it was		
5 Choose the correct	t answer from	a, b, c, or d.		
1. Have you ever	45			a cake?
	make c)		d) n	nakes
2. We met a man	4) 44 - 4) 1 0 10 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1		vorks	in a garden.
a) where b)	which c)	who	d) w	
Final Revision - Exams		our child doolki		

### Final Revision: -

- 3. The colorful birds on the tree are very
  - a) beauty

a) visits

- b) patient
- c) luck
- d) beautiful

the zoo yesterday.

- 4. We didn't
- b) visit
- c) visited
- d) visiting

- 5. Without rain, the grass ...
- .

grow.

I play volleyball.

- a) can
- b) will
- c) might
- d) can't

- 6. I don't play basketball,
  - a) so
- b) but
- c) because
- d) and
- 6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.
- 1. didn't ! meet my yesterday friend .
- 2. water Mangrove in grow trees salt .
- 3. you ever Have to travelled Cairo ?
- 7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

How to keep healthy

**Guiding words:** 

(fruit - vegetables - exercise - water)

# **Test (7)**

1 2	the correct a	in different we
	Listen and choose the to-	in different ways.
	Lada tho	wdys.

- Mangrove trees help the
  - d) country
- b) environment c) village 2. Mangrove trees protect the non-living things and the living things in
- ecosystem c) mountain d) desert the
  - b) river a) marine
- stop the sand from moving away.

- 3. The deep
  - b) roots a) leaves
- c) plants
- d) seeds

for many animals.

- This ecosystem is a safe
  - a) house b) village
- c) home
- d) cave

# 2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

## gravity - astronaut - float - problems - planets

because I am interested I am Amal. I want to be an 1) . It's important to study other planets in the stars and the 2) because it helps us understand our own planet, and this might help us . When you see videos of the solve some of the earth's 3) International Space Station, it looks fun to live without gravity. The people all the time.

## Read the following text then answer the questions.

Mohamed Salah is my favorite sports star. He plays football for a very good team in Europe. He plays for Egypt too. He is very good at scoring goals. He is a fast runner and clever footballer.

Mohamed Salah has usually got a big smile. He is quite short for a footballer le is 1.75 meters tall. Mohamed Salah has got dark curly hair and a beard. He is a kind person. He gives money to build schools and

#### Final Revision

hospitals in Egypt. He also gives money to help poor people. He is very friendly and always talks to his fans.

He has not got much time for hobbies, but when he is at home, he often enjoys playing video games and watching films.

## A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1. One of Salah's hobbies is
  - a) giving money to poor
- b) building schools

c) getting much time

- d) playing video games
- 2. He gives money to build
  - a) hotels
- b) theaters
- c) schools
- d) post offices
- 3. The underlined word "fast" is the opposite of
  - a) quick b) quiet

- c) slow
- d) happy

- B) Answer the following questions.
- 4. What sport does Mohamed Salah play?
- 5. Who does Salah talk to?

## (4) The Reader

### Read and write T (True) or F (False).

- Jubari is a brave and curious son.
- Jubari found Wadi of the Gazetles.
- Jubari was born in Wadi el Gemal.
- Acacia trees don't need gazelles.

## Complete the following sentences:

1. Subira taught Jubari which

were dangerous.

Jubari and Subira's favorite food was

# 5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1.	We can't take pho	otos in here,	c) can	d) do
	-l cont	P) Mili		it?
2.	It was not very co	ld yesterday,	c) is not	d) do not
	a) was			She is still young.
3.	Mary		c) must not	d) can't
	a) will	b) can	c) mastrist	has a cough.
4.	This is Ali		\ which	d) when
	a) who	b) where	c) which	the story.
<b>5</b> .	Omar said that he			d) liked
	a) like	b) likes	c) will like	and the second s
6.	If I met a famous			know what to say.
	a) won't	b) wouldn't	c) can't	d) don't

## 6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1. with of The parts the forest the ecosystem interact .
- 2. your beat How does heart often ?
- 3. to eat catch Can we a rabbit ?



## Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

**Guiding words:** 

Rain

(Rain - important - living things - plants - grow - drink - animals - humans)

# Test (8)

# 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1.	In some ways,	humans are si	milar to	
	a) plants	b) water	c) sun	d) sky
2.	Our		move blood	away from our heart.
	a) veins	b) arteries	c) bones	d) muscles
3.	Our			ry blood to the heart.
	a) bones	b) stomach	c) veins	d) arteries
4	We don't use			ithe elect t

## 2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

#### ate-found-dinosaur-mountains-home

Grandpa : What are you doing tomorrow, children?

Donia : We are going into the 1) ........

with Dad. There were dinosaur bones in the mountains.

b) carbon dioxide c) water d) food

Tarek : What would we do if we 2) dinosaur bones?

Donia : I would take them 3)

a) oxygen

Here's the shovel. Let's start digging.

Tarek : Look! I've found a bone. Is it a 4) bone?

Donia I don't think they're heavy enough to be dinosaur bones.

It's just an animal bone.

## 3 Read the following text then answer the questions.

There were many natural resources in <u>ancient</u> Egypt. Egyptians used honey to make medicine. It was very important for helping with problems with the skin or eyes. There are hieroglyphics in ancient temples

which show people keeping bees. People used papyrus. It is a strong plant to make things such as baskets and sandals, but the most important thing people made from it was paper. The ancient Egyptians made some of the first books in the world using it.

# A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- for helping with problems with the skin. 1. Egyptians used
  - a) linen
- b) papyrus
- c) honey
- d) flax
- 2. The underlined word "ancient" means very
  - a) new
- b) old

- c) fast
- d) big
- 3. The hieroglyphics in ancient temples show people keeping
  - a) hens
- b) bees
- c) birds
- d) cows

- B) Answer the following questions.
- 4. Who used honey to treat health problems?
- 5. What was papyrus used for?

# 4 The Reader

## Read and write I (True) or F (False).

- 1. Jubari was born in Wadi el Gemal.
- 2. Acacia trees don't need gazelles.
- 3. The first animal Jubari met was a dugong.
- Lake Nasser is a natural lake.

## Complete the following sentences:

and curious. 1. Jubari was

2. The mountains were too

6. They

a) go

# Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- We met a man works as a doctor. a) who b) which c) when d) where 2. Where have you ..... a) be b) been c) are d) being 3. If 1 . . the king, I wouldn't know what to say. a) meet b) will meet c) met d) would meet 4. Salma can't swim, she? a) can b) will c) does d) can't 5. Malak has a book is about medicinal plants. a) who b) where c) when d) which
- c) have gone d) will go 6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

b) went

- 1. Crater The Ngorongor is square kilometers 260 .
- 2. lives What in forests mangrove ?
- 3. the USA to Has traveled Mr Kamal -?
- Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

An ecosystem

**Guiding words:** 

(animals - plants - area - big - interact - species )

to Jordan two years ago.

... from a. b. c. or d.

# 1....(9)

-		the correct ans	Met Hom .	<b>y</b> = ( <i>t</i> = <i>t</i> =	
1 Lis	sten and choose	e the correct ans		volc	anoes
1. Moun	t Kilimanjaro is	made of c)	three	volc d), four	- 00
a) tv	vo <b>b)</b> th	urty			
2. Kilima	injaro is the talle	est mountain c)	America	d) Austra	
a) At	rica b) E			to climb Kilim	anjaro
	sy <b>b)</b> ni		difficult	d) good	
•	is snow and			· · · · at t	he top
	iter b) ga	c)	ice	d) fall	
2 Rea	d and complete	e the dialog wit	h words fr	om the box.	
		Which-haven't		140	
Sondos	: Have you t	ravelled abroad,	Dad?		
- 1	: Yes. I have	1)	to many	European cou	ntries.
Soracs	; 2)	* * * * * * *		you been to	Italy?
- Ine	Yes, I have	been to Italy.			
Sonacio	: Have you v	sited England?			
amer	: No, I 3)				,
Sondos	: 4)	,	countr	y did you like I	most?
	: I liked Franc				
Section 1					

# Read the following text then answer the questions.

Last year I visited the Winter Palace in St. Petersburg in Russia. was such a fantastic trip. In this Palace there are marble and gold everywhere with hugé chandeliers hanging from the ceiling. The light

made everything shiny. The Winter Place is full of treasures from the past. I really enjoyed the amazing views over the river Neva. I had to walk a lot so I wore comfortable shoes. Going to the Palace in the morning is much better than going in the afternoon, because there were long queues in the afternoon. I hope I can go there one more time.

- A) Choose the correct arrange from a, b, c or d.
- 1. I visited the Winter Palace
  - a) yesterday (i) last week (c) last year
- d) last month

- 2. The Winter Palace is on the river
  - a) Nile
- 1) Thames c) Neva
- d) Seine

- 3. The underlined word "It" refers to the
  - a) Winter Palace b) trip c) Summer Palace d) castle

- B) Answer the following questions.
- 4. Where is the Winter Palace?
- 5. Why did the visitor wear comfortable shoes?



## The Reader

## Read and write T (True) or F (False).

- Jubari looked for Donga.
- 2. The beach was too sandy.
- 3. Wadi el Gemal isn't a perfect place for gazelles.
- 4. Subira taught Jubari which animals were dangerous.

#### Complete the following sentences: В

1. The sea water was very

for Jubari.

2. The dugong lives in the

forest.

Help your child deal with such questions.

AI-BAHER - Connect Plus (5) - First Term 55

# Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

	-		seen a lion
1.	Have you		c) yet d) just
	a) ever	b) never	she doesn't like basketbal
2.	Huda likes tennis	;	c) because d) but
	-a) and	b) so	a lot of money, I'll buy a new ca
3.	If 1		c) had d) will have
	a) have	b) has	it sometimes snows
4.	This is a place		c) when d) which
*	a) where	b) who	give them a lot of homework, will she
5.	Their teacher		c) can't d) doesn't
	a) will	b) won't	the fire service if we see a fire
	My parents	العمالنين ( )	c) calls d) called
	a) call	b) will call	0)

# Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1. can What we do with natural resources ?
- 2. dont They look normal shoes like .
- cupboard coffee isn't There any in the .

# Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

## **Buiding words:**

a) call

## **Natural Wonders**

The Sahara Desert - largest - eleven - countries - Mount Kilimanjaro - three - volcanoes - tallest )

# Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- The kingfisher visited her , the lizard in a mangrove tree.
  - a) friend b) mother c) father d) teacher
- The lizard was
  - a) excited b) happy c) delighted d) sad
- 3. When the people came to the mangrove forest, they cut down
- b) flowers
  - a) grass
    - c) trees
- d) leaves
- 4. After cutting trees, it was difficult for the lizard to find
- to eat

- a) food
- b) figs
- c) fish
- d) birds

# Read and complete the text with words from the box.

## sweet-snakes-because-Honey-bees .

to make honey in ancient Egypt over 4.500 People kept 1) was an expensive but years ago. 2) an important natural resource. Everyone liked it 3) you could use it for many different things. People used it to make food taste 4) They used it as a medicine, too. If you cut yourself, you could put honey on the cut.

# 3 Read the following text then answer the questions.

I'm Amal. I want to be an astronaut because I'm interested in stars and the planets. It is important to study other planets because it helps us understand our own planet, and this might help us solve some of Earth's problems. When you see videos of the International Space Station it looks fun living without gravity. The people float all the time. I have read a fot about the planet Mars and the research scientists are doing.

### Exams A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. 1. Amal wants to be a/an d) astronaut c) engineer a) doctor b) pilot will make people float all the time. 2. Living without d) water c) food a) gravity b) flood 3. The underlined word "float" is the opposite of c) think d) run a) Sing b) sink B) Answer the following questions. 4. Why is it important to study planets? 5. Why do people float into space? 4) The Reader Read and write T (True) or F (False). 1. The sea water was fresh. 2. The Gebel Elba is very steep for Jubari's legs. The mangroves were too salty. 4. Jubari was brave and curious. Complete the following sentences: 1. Subira showed Jubari where to rest on 2. Jubari and Subira's favorite food was Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

## b) won't Final Revision - Exams

She has

a) never

b) yet

Their teacher won't give them homework,

c) since

c) can

d) for

d) is

been to France.

he?

**Final Revision** 

3.	She has tish	 F - * A FF F F F - *	 	rice	for	lunc	h

- a) but b) so c) because d) and
- 4. They ...... to Jordan two years ago.
  - a) go b) went c) have gone d) goes
- If my family to the park later, I'd tell you.
- a) go b) went c) will go d) goes
- 6. These are the girls are very good at maths.
  - a) who b) which c) when d) where
- 6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.
- 1. would was there What gravity no happen if ?
- 2. park the I like visiting .
- 3. the environment will How you help ?
  - 7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

What do you want to be?

## **Guiding words:**

(astronaut - study - stars - planets - space station - gravity)

# Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

	**			
1.	Egyptian peopl	e kept		to make honey
	a) goats	b) buffaloes	c) dogs	d) bees .
2.	In ancient Egyp	ot, honey was.		,
	a) cheap	b) expensive	c) hot	d) cold
3.	Honey is an imp			resource
	a) man-made	b) natural	c) artificial	d) useless.
4.	People used ho	ney to make foo	d taste	, 350,
	a) sweet	b) salty .	c) sour	d) awful

# Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

## family -train - been - Why - When

		The state of the s	
Dalia	». b	Where have you been?	
Rania	4 4	I have 1)	
Dalia	Ī	2)	
Rania	:	To see the temples and enjoy the warm weath	id you go there?
Dalia	:	How did you go there?	ner.
Rania	:	By 3)	
Dalia	:	Who did you go with?	
Rania		I went there with my 4)	
Re		the following text then answer	

# Read the following text then answer the questions.

Many people prefer to live in towns and big cities like Cairo and Alexandria. The are attracted by their lights, tall buildings and clubs. Many people leave their villages and live in towns where the chances of work are found. They work in big shops and restaurants and earn much money. Those people have forgotten that they're in need of the village

and its crops, vegetables and fruits. Without the farmer, people would

- A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.
- 1. Clubs and tall buildings are found in the
  - a) village
- b) city
- c) park
- 2. People can go to the
- \*\*\*\*\*
- farm to have a meal.

a) cinema

a) many

- b) theatre
- c) restaurant
- d) bakery

- 3. People in cities can earn ....
  - b) few
- c) much
- money.

- B) Answer the following questions.
- 4. Why do many people prefer to live in big cities?
- 5. What does the underlined word "They" refer to?

# (4) The Reader

## A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

- 1. Jubari can run fast in Ras Hankorab beach.
- 2. Jubari found Wadi of gazelles.
- 3. There were a lot of acacia trees in the desert.
- Jubari was Subira's son.

# B Complete the following sentences:

- 1. The people made Lake Nasser because they needed
- 2. Gebei Elba is very

S Chase as correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

l exercise every day. I always eat healthy diet. a) because c) SO b) but a) and by bus. My father has ci) traveling c) travels b) traveled a) travel hard, she it pass the exam. 3 If she c) studied d) will study b) studies a) stuoy .... English, didn't she? 4. She c) will like d) is liked b) liked al likes ..... drive cars, does he? M: Hassan c) isn't d) hasn't b) doesn't ) don't to go on a trip. Yesterday they decide b) decides c) decided d) will decide

to the words in the correct order to make consuming.

- i traveled on Ho - a ship you ?
- 2. Is largest Cairo in the Egypt city .
- 3. V.cather study Storm chasers extreme .
  - Write a rext of FIFTY (50) words about:

Resources in ancient Eg.

( successible - flax - linen - papyrus - books )

# Test (12)

4	litten and	rhause	1113	correct	answer	1000	3,	i.	., (	or	u.
---	------------	--------	------	---------	--------	------	----	----	------	----	----

4	Mangrove tre	es can grow in	•	•	•	water
	a) nesti	b) salt	c)	Sweet	d) sour	
2.	Mangrove for	rests			the marine egosy	Men
	a) protect	· damage			3) Al	
3.	The leaves of	mangrove trees take	e more	- fron	n the air than bluer	1JES
J.	a) oxyge:	b) carbon dioxid	ie c) -	water	1) 75	
4.		pecial honey from t			و د و ده او	, HH
			<b>3)</b> :	stems	4) 110-113	
	7	and the state of t	ver with	arno de	from the bloom	

## a complete the dialog with words from the box.

#### Glood-went-What-How-go

Tom	. 1	Where did you go at the pleekand	
Ann	. ' 1	1)	.C . =
Tom			3673470
Ann		, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	
Tom		Viro did you go with?	
Ann	, 1 d	went with my 31	
Tom	: 3	١.	ddycroay"
Ann .		played tennis.	

# Road the following text then enswer the questions

During the summer holiday, Karim, his brother and sister went to Alexandria. One may they thought it was a rice to a to trie this tak the Meather was lovely. They hired a bout to the points. Hier area this to determine there for from the above. Scudenly the way is accompanied entities, and the root turned the second of the continued to the cont

shouts and quickly took off his clothes, jumped into the water and swam to them. He was able to save them and bring them safely to the shore.

Δ١	Choose	the	correct	answer	from	a,	b,	C	Or	a.
_			0011	_						

- They hired a boat because the weather was
- a) bad
- b) ugly c) lovely

d) terrible

weather.

The underlined word "lovely" means

d) fine

- a) bad
- b) cold
- c) hot

- Summer is a
  - a) sport
- b) season
- c) year

d) month

- B) Answer the following questions.
- Where did Karim go during the summer holiday?
- 5 What was their idea?

## The Reader

## Read and write T (True) or F (False).

The acacia trees leaves give gazelles food and water.

Jubari learnt a lot from his father.

Jubari is going to look for Wadi of the Gazelles.

Jubari was thirsty, so he tried to drink.

## supplete the following sentences:

Subira showed Jubari which

to eat.

They got enough water from the

tree.

~

## Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I passed the exam I studied harc b) because c) and a) so d) but 2. If I a lot of money, I would buy a car b) have a) has c) had d) haven't 3. There isn't any grass to eat, so the rabbits be hungry b) can't a) can c) will d) won't 4. She hasn't done her homework a) since b) just c) for d) yet 5. Khaled's sister is 12 years old, a) isn't he b) isn't she c) hasn't he d) hasn't she 6. It hot yesterday

# a) will be b) isn't c) won't be d) wasn't 6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1. met \* \* who a man a garden works in .
- 2. do you What is natural think a resource ?
- 3. trees cut came People and down some .

# 7

# Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Guiding words: The mangrove trees

( important - marine ecosystem - leaves - thick - animals - live )

# 1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d

	The mand	choose the corre	ect answer	from a L		
1.	The lava and	choose the corre				
	a) flash This makes so	b) ash	c) spl	m ash	iix <sub>· W</sub> d)	ith mud flows. crash
	a) bad The	b) fertile	c) sac	wnere d	900	od tood growe
4.	rarmers are ve	b) farmers ery	thank the	volcanoes	for	ugly helping them, bakers
(2	a) worried Read and co	b) afraid  Implete the dialo	c) sad	ords from	d)	at the end. happy
		Did - What -			-110	nox,

# Did - What - stories - Do - fine

Tarek .	stories - Do - fine	
Ahmed	How are you Ahmed?	
Tarek	l m 1) 2)	
Ahmed		, thanks.
Tarek	I'm doing my English homework.	are you doing now?
Ahmed	<b>'</b>	*** 10 m
Tarek .	Yes, I like English very much.	you like English?
Ahmed :	Do you read 4)	_
1	Yes, they are my favorite.	ın English?
🔨 🕽 🧎 Read th	e following to the	

# Read the following text then answer the questions.

Sherif wanted to be an engineer when he was 10 years old. He always watched TV programs about robots, and he loved making things. When he was 13, he started helping a robot design company online. He did his school work in the day and in the evening he worked on his robot projects. This experience helped rum to start his own company.

He said that the science and math lessons at school helped him to learn how to solve problems. He also found English very useful as it helps him work with people across the world.

## A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- - a) doctor \_ ) engineer c) teacher d) vet
- 2. The underlined word "start" is the opposite of
- a) beginb) finishc) playd) study3. Sherif found useful.
- a) math b) English c) history d) geography

### B) Answer the following questions.

- 4. When did he start helping a robot design company online?
- 5. What subjects helped him to solve problems?



## ad and write T (True) or F (False).

The crocodile looked like a dead tree in the water.

- 2. Subira taught Jupari to stay near animals with big teeth.
- 3. The crocodile lives in Lake Nasser.
- 4. The desert is a perfect place for gazelles.

# B Complete the following sentences:

- 1. Jubari climbed the biggest
- 2. Gebel Elba is the

home.

# Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 17	Has he	•		
2.	a) travel They are happy.	b) traveled	c) travels	on a plane or a train?  d) traveling
3.	If he was free, he	b) don't	c) are	d) aren't they?
4.	a) will This is Dina	b) can	c) may	d) would
	a) which They visited a wa	b) who	c) when	lives in Cairo. d) where
6.	a) who	b) where	c) which	ey saw some animals.  d) when
	a) bought	b) have bough		
- b	Put the words	in the correct a	refer to market	

# Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1. a bike you Have ridden before ?
- 2. to used People mud houses build .
- 3. here be is Life going to better .



7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Guiding words:

Sunlight

( need - food - vitamin D - protect - sick - feel happy )

# Test (14)

1	) 1	isten and	choose the correct	ans	wer from a, b	, c,	or d.
1.	It's		and Salma a	nd I	ner family are g	going	g for a holiday
	a)	winter	b) spring		summer		autumn
2.	Sal	ma and her	family are going to				
	a)	Aswan	b) Luxor	c)	Marsa Alam	d)	Alexandria
3.	Sal	ma looks ou	ut of the		•		window
	a) .	bus	b) car	c)	train	d)	plane
4.	Sal	ma sees a s	sign to Sukari				
	a)	fine	b) mine .	c)	line	d)	coin

# Read and complete the text with words from the box.

Archaeologists - Doctors - natural - volcano - world

The Great Pyramid is man-made, which means that people made it.

1) can learn a lot about history from buildings like this.

We can also learn a lot from 2) wonders of the

3) such as the Ngorongoro Crater. For example, we know this was once a 4) which erupted millions of years ago.

# Read the following text then answer the questions.

Jack is a carpenter. He has a big workshop. He gets up at 6 o'clock in the morning. He has breakfast. Then, he goes to his big workshop. He makes tables and chairs. He likes his job. Jack has two daughters and a son. His son is older than his daughters. On Friday, he doesn't go to work. He likes watching TV with his family.

			Exams
A) Choose the co	orrect answer fi	rom a, b, c or d.	
1. The underline			
a) buy	b) sell	c) make	d) eat
2. Jack doesn't h	•		worksho
a) small	b) big	c) large	d) huge
3. A carpenter ca	n make	#44E048 * 44 * ****************************	.,,
a) bread	b) bikes	c) tables	d) vegetables
B) Answer the following the state of the sta	_	<b>15.</b>	
5. When does Jack	get up?		
	4 The	Reader	
A Read and wr	ite T (True) or I	(False).	
1. Jubari is a dorcas	s camel.		
2. Jubari was very s	strong.		
3. Jubari wanted to		S.	
4. Subira is Jubari's			
3 Complete the		ntences:	
. Jubari was brave a	ınd		
Jubari was born in			
5 Choose the co	rrect answer fr	om a, b, c, or d.	
and of		ус	u this story already.
	医水黄水杨 网络西美国新疆市 医二甲二甲二甲二甲二甲二甲二甲二甲二甲二甲二甲二甲二甲二甲二甲二甲二甲二甲二甲		44"

c) have told

b) tells

a) tell

d) telling

### Final Revision

2. She will visit us tomorrow,

she?

- a) will
- b) can't
- c) won't
- d) can

He said he a) plant

- b) planted
- c) plants
- trees. d) planting

He eats much

he is fat.

- a) 50
- b) because
- c) but
- d) or

5. I'd have an ice cream if it ... a) is

6.

- b) was
- c) will be
- d) be

- - you ever visited another country?

- a) Has
- b) Have
- c) Are
- d) Do

# Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1. can pour You into a liquid a cup .
- 2. doing are What tomorrow you ?
- 3. the air flew up The children into .

# Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

## A school trip

# **Guiding words:**

(last - friends - arrived - Pyramids - Sphinx - museum - Tower - nice time )

# **Test (15)**

#### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. Mr Taha works at the c) school d) temple a) park b) museum 2. Our class is learning about natural c) houses d) forces a) courses b) resources They are talking about resources in Egypt. c) modern d) ancient a) old b) new

4. Ancient Egypt had

of natural resources.

a) little

b) few

c) a lot

d) less

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

### fresh-drinking-important-rain-salty

for our life. We need it every day for and washing. When there is no there is a drought. It's difficult to find water in a drought.

# Read the following text then answer the questions.

One summer evening, I was sitting by the open window reading a new story. After a time, it became too dark to read easily. So I put the book down and went up to switch on the light. I was just about to draw the curtains as well, when I heard a loud cry of help! It seemed to come from the trees at the end of the garden. I looked out, but I saw nothing. I used door of the house, I saw a bird sitting on the top of the window near the a large green and red bird. It was a parrot. It was repeating "Help", but in

- Aho corr	not annual for		
A) Choose the corr	ect answer fro	ma,b,cord.	
1. I was reading a	new		
a) book	b) article	c) report	d) story
2. It was a			which cried for help.
a) parrot	b) boy	c) man	d) girl
<ol><li>The underlined v</li></ol>			
a) tree	b) garden		d) window
B) Answer the follo Why did the write	r on to the pard	s. en?	
	· · · ·	OIT:	
. Where did the wri	ter think the lou	d cry come from	ነ?
	4) The	Reader	
A Read and wri	te T (True) or I	(False).	
I. Jubari found Wad	i of the Gazelle	s.	
2. Predators aren't o	langerous anim	als.	_
3. For the first year	of his life, Jubar	i followed his mo	other.
The crocodile live	s in Lake Nass	er.	
B Complete the	e following se	entences:	
I. The beach was to			
2. The mountains we		from a h t Of	d.
5 Choose the c		iioiii a, b, t, t.	they?
<ol> <li>They like Englis</li> </ol>	h,	) don't	d) didn't
	<b>b)</b> do	c) don't	catch the bus
a) does			
a) does 2. If he ran, he a) will	b) would	c) may	d) can

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

_				
	80	_		
_	×	-	m	-
	•		m	100

- a) ride b) rode c) ridden d) rides

  4. They said that they the lion
  a) see b) saw c) sees d) will see

  5. They met a man works in a garden
  a) which b) who c) where d) when
  6. He eats a lot of fruit it's healthy
- a) but b) so c) because d) and 6. Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.
- 1. flax used People make to linen .
- 2. like be would I to a teacher .
- 3. center far from museum The science isn't the city .



# Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

## A picnic

### **Guiding words:**

( picnic - family - fun - played - football - happy - enjoyed )

# Test (16)

# Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

-		o a very important		
1.	Copper wa	s a very important b) metal	c) pedal	d) food
	a) medal Copper wa	·		to bend.
	a) difficult	t b) hard	c) easy	d) funny
2	People use	ed it to make		
	a) tools	b) pools	c) rulers	d) rolls
.1	We can see	e a lot of the object	s today in the Egyptia	n ·
ty.	a) parks	(a) zoos	c) museums	d) banks
(2		id complete the di	ialog with words fro	m the box.
No.		unhealthy - healt	hy - twice - tennis - W	hat
	mar :	What's your favori		

Anmed

How often do you practise tennis? Oma.

a week. I practise it 2) Ahmed diet? Do you have 3)

Omar

Yes, I do. Ahmed do you always eat? Omar 1)

I eat a lot of dairy products. Ahmed

Declaration text then answer the questions

English is an interesting language. It's spoken all over the world. More people are learning it all over the world. Learning English is not so difficult, but unless you use it quite often, you'll forget it. A foreign language gives you the real chance to read and know how other people think and

live. This will make you know a lot about the wide world if you ever think of going to foreign countries. You'll find English more useful. Good English gives you a better chance for work.

## A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1. English is
  - a) useless
- b) useful
- c) careful
- d) careless
- Good English gives you a better chance for good
  - a) school b) job
- c) sport

d) house

- The underlined pronoun "it" refers to
  - a) English
- b) world c) chance
- d) Arabic

- B) Answer the following questions.
- 4. What does a foreign language give you?
- 5. Where is English spoken?

## 4 The Reader

## Read and write T (True) or F (False).

- Wadi el Gemal is the perfect place for gazelles.
- The beach was too stony.
- Jubari thought he might see the Wadi of Gazelles from the top.
- Gebel Elba is the home of the Nubian ibex.

## Complete the following sentences:

- 1. Donga is the name of a
- ... Jubari's

1 1

were going into the ground.

## **Final Revision**

Final riction			
6 Choose the c	orrect answer f	rom a, b, c, or d.	
1. This is the place	b) where	c) who	flive.
2. If you need to in a) will push	b) pushing	c) pusnes	d) pushed
a) sell	b) sells	c) will sell	house two years ago.  d) sold a car.
<ul><li>4. He said he</li><li>a) buy</li><li>5. We can't make of</li></ul>	b) buys	c) bought	d) buying we?
a) can't	b) can	c) will	d) won't l don't eat candies.
6. I want to be hea a) but	<b>b)</b> so	c) because	d) and
Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.			

- 1. the visited Have desert you ?
- 2. sunlight from get We vitamin D -
- 3. food eat important It's to healthy .

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

**Guiding words:** 

**Healthy Diet** 

(fat - sugar - vitamins - vegetables - energy - carbohydrates healthy - good for)

# **Listening Texts**

#### Unit (1)

### 1- Listen and choose the correct answer

Instead of water, our veins and arteries carry blood around our bodies. Arteries move blood away from our heart veins carry blood to it. The nutrients and oxygen that we need are in our blood. But we don't use carbon dioxide like plants do

### - Listen and choose the correct answer.

Seleem is a healthy boy. He loves sports. He plays tennis, football, and basketball. He eats healthy food like fruit vegetables, and rice. He doesn't eat much chocolate because he knows that this food isn't very healthy. In the evening, he wants to relax, so he reads a book

#### Unit (2)

### 1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

The African continent has some of the most famous natural wonders in the world. The Ngorongoro crater in Tanzania is the largest volcanic crater in the world. It formed when a volcano erupted millions of years ago. It is about 260 square kilometres.

#### - Listen and choose the correct answer.

Rainbow Bridge is one of the largest natural arches in the world. It is also 200 million years old. It is 88 meters tall. It is in a very hot desert.

#### Unit (3)

## 1. Listen and choose the correct answer.

People kept bees to make honey in ancient Egypt over 4,500 years ago. Honey was an expensive but an important natural resource. Everyone liked it because you could use it for many different things. People used it to make food taste sweet. They used it as a medicine, too. If you cut yourself, you could put honey on the cut People put bees in a house called hives.

#### - Listen and choose the correct answer.

People in ancient Egypt used mud to build houses and other buildings. They took it from the Nile when it was soft and made it into square bricks. These were hard and strong when they are dried

#### Unit (4)

### 1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

I'm Amal. I want to be an astronaut because I'm interested in the stars and the planets

It is important to study other planets because it helps us understand our own planet, and this might help us solve some of Earth's problems. When you see videos of the International Space Station, it looks fun living without gravity.

## - Listen and choose the correct and

I'm Karım. I decided to be a pilot when I went to an airplane festival with my mom

# Listening Texts

and dad. We saw lots of different planes in the sky, and some of them did amazing moves, flying close to the ground, and then flying around in a circle.

## محافظة الفليوبية (1)

# () Listen and choose the correct answer.

Rainforests are characterized by warm climatic conditions throughout the year. The average temperature recorded there ranges from 72 to 93 degrees Fahrenheit.

Rainforests are near the equator. A huge variety of animals can live in the rainforests.

## إدارة كوم حمادة ( 2 )

## 1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Nabq is a very big national park in South Sinai. Along the coast, there is a mangrove forest. Mangrove forests are so important for the marine life. Mangrove trees can grow in the salt water. They have amazing roots which grow high out of the water.

### إدارة أدكو ( 3 )

## 1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

My name is Jana. When I grow up, I'd love to be an engineer like my uncle Wael. His job sounds really interesting. Engineers help make things such as skateboards and roads. Uncle Wael says that you need to understand maths to do this job. I work hard to be successful in life

### محافظة القليوبية (4)

## 1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Nabq is a very big national park in South

Sinai. Last week Heba went on a trip there. She learnt that the mangrove trees can grow in salt water. They protect the living things and the non-living things in the marne ecosystem.

## ادارة بندركفر الدوار (5)

### 1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Yosof is my friend. He wants to be a pilot. He says that people without gravity float all the time. He is interested in the stars and the planets. Plants help us solve some of the earth's problems

### إدارة الغردقة ( 6 )

### 1) Listen and choose the correct ans wer.

Youssef is on a vacation in Dahab with his family. It's near the Red Sea. It has a nice beach. The water in Dahab is so cool. He enjoys swimming in the sea.

#### Test (7)

## 1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Mangrove trees help the environment in different ways. Mangrove trees protect the non-living things and the living things in the marine ecosystem. When there are storms, their deep roots stop the sand from moving away. This ecosystem is also a safe home for many animals.

#### Test (8)

# 1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

In some ways, humans are similar to plants. Think about our circulatory system. Instead of water, our veins and arteries carry blood around our bodies. Arteries

move blood away from our heart. Veins carry blood to it. We don't use carbon dioxide like plants do.

#### Test (9)

### 1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Mount Kilimanjaro is made of three volcanoes. Mount Kilimanjaro is the tallest mountain in Africa. Every year, about 25.000 people climb it but it is difficult. The mountain has different ecosystems. At the top there is snow and ice.

#### Test (10)

#### 1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

The kingfisher visited her friend, the lizard, in a mangrove tree. The lizard was sad. She explained that when people came to the mangrove forest, they cut down the trees. After that, it was difficult for the lizard to find food to eat.

#### Test (11)

#### 1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Ancient Egyptian kept bees to make honey over 4.500 years ago. Honey was expensive but an important natural resource. Everyone liked honey because you could use it for many different things. People used honey to make food taste sweet.

#### Test (12)

#### 1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Many ove trees are special because make tools, cooking pots, as we they can grow in salt water. Mangrove jewelry. We can see a lot of thes forests protect the marine ecosystem. The today in the Egyptian museums.

leaves of mangrove trees take more carbon dioxide from the air than other trees. Bees make special honey from the flowers of mangrove trees.

#### Test (13)

#### 1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

The lava and ash mix with mud flows, this makes soil fertile where good food grows. When the farmers come back to the land, they thank the volcanoes for the helping hand. Farmers are very happy at the end.

#### Test (14)

#### 1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

It's summer and Salma and her family are going to Marsa Alam for a holiday. Salma looks out of the car window and sees a sign to the Sukari mine. She's very excited.

#### Test (15)

#### 1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Hello, my name's Mr Tana and I work at the museum. I know your class is learning about natural resources, so I'm here today to talk about resources in ancient Egypt. Ancient Egypt had a lot of them.

#### Test (16)

#### 1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Copper was a very important metal. It was easy to bend, and people used it to make tools, cooking pots, as well as jewelry. We can see a lot of these objects today in the Egyptian museums.

# Model Answers

#### Unit (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer. 2) Arteries

1) blood 4) carbon dioxide

Justen and choose the correct answer. 2) healthy

11 sports 4) relax

2) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

3) living 2) desert

Read and complete the text with words from the box. 4) happy 3) protect 2) sunlight

1) food 3) Read the text then answer the questions.

## A)(hoose the correct answer.

2) salty . 3) thin 1) marine

B)keswer the following questions.

4) Nabo National Park.

5) The roots are amazing the leaves are thick.

### 4) (hoose the correct answer. (Vocabulary)

3) non-living 2) living () leaves 6) interact 5) protect 4) butterflies 9) success

8) beauty 7) patient 12) sunlight 11) Arteries 10) Luck

14) nutrients 13 healthy

#### -) (hoose the correct answer. (Grammar)

4) who 3) where 1) which 2) which 8) who 5) who 7) where 6) where 9) but 12) and 11) when 10) because 13, so 14) and

5) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1) How often does your heart beat?

2) The dugong says that the people are back.

3) Do you know my aunt who lives in Alex?

4) What lives in the mangrove forests?

6) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about

#### (How to keep healthy)

To keep healthy you should eat lots of fruit and vegetables. You should also exercise. You shouldn't eat unhealthy food like chocolate. You should relax.

·) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

#### (Our heart)

Your heart beats over 100,000 times a day! So it's Important to keep your heart healthy. When you walk

run, swim, or cycle, you make your heart work harder. If you exercise regularly, your heart works better and you can get the minerals, nutrients, and oxygen you need more easily

#### Unit (2)

### 1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1) African 2) Tanzania 3) crater 4 260

Listen and choose the correct answer

1) Bridge 2) 200 3) tall 4) hot

#### 2) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box

1) reading 2) Tanzania 4) buffaloes

-) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) River 2) carryon 3) eroded 4) noise

#### 3) Read the text then answer the questions.

#### A) Choose the correct answer.

1) Australia 2) month 31 limestone

#### B) Answer the following questions.

4) They're 25,000 to 30,000 years old.

Between three and five meters high.

#### 4) (hoose the correct answer (Vocabulary)

3) eleven 4 hot 2) wetlands t) volcanic

7) erode 6) canyon 5) shape

11 Lava 10) Soil 9) erupt 8) wetland

14) basket 12) mud flow 13) ribbon -) Choose the correct answer. (Grammar)

3) haven't played 1) traveled 2) met

7) visited - 6) ever 5) seen 4) Has (1) WON 10) saw 9) been B) eaten

14) never been 13) taken 12) I have

## 5) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1) The African continent is an amazing place.

2) Have you traveled on a ship?

3) I have already told you this story.

4) What is special about the Island of Java?

## 6) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

### (The Sahara Desert)

The Sahara Desert is one of the natural wonders of Africa, it is the largest hot desert in the world, it covers eleven countries. Some of the sand dunes can be about 180 meters high.

## -) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about

#### ( Man-made wonders of Africa

The natural world in Africa is bea "ful but people in this continent have made many incredible things, too Some of the most important man made wonders are in Egypt, the Pyramids of Giza, the Sphinx, the temples of Abu Simbel, and the Valley of the Kings. People come from all over the world to visit these places and learn about Egypt's history. But there's a lot more to see in Africa

#### Unit (3)

- 1) Listen and choose the correct answer.
- 1) bees
- 2) sweet
- 3) medicine 4) hives
- -) Listen and choose the correct answer.
- 1) mud

2 Nile

3) square

- 4) hard
- 2) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box
- 1) flax

- 2) clothes
- 3) important
- 4) cotton
- -) Read and complete the text with words from the box.
- 1) countries
- 2) fresh
- 3) medicine 4) Delta
- 3) Read the text then answer the questions
- A)Choose the correct answer
- 1) Rayan
- 2) bottom
- 3: Staty-seven
- B) Answer the following questions.
- 4) An oasis in the desert
- 5) Two lakes
- 4) Choose the correct answer. (Vocabulary)
- 1) renewable 2) boil
- 3. freeze
- 4) shovel
- 5) flax
- 6) Copper
  - 7, honey

- 8) papyrus
- 9) mud
- 10, blind
- 11) odor

- 12) sticky
- 13) solid
- 14) do
- -) Choose the correct answer. (Grammar)
- 1) would
- met
- 3) Will
- 4: Visited

- 5) flew
- 6) was
- 7) Will
- 8) sink 12: would

- 9) liked 13) was
- 10) had 14) went
- 5) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

11) could

- 1) Which is Wael's favorite bird?
- 2) People used honey as a medicine
- People used linen to make clothes
- 4) The old cheese has a bad odor

#### 6) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

#### (Mud)

People in ancient Egypt used mud. They used it for building houses and other buildings. They took it from the Nile when it was soft and made it into square bricks. These bricks were hard and strong when they dried. It was very important

#### -) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

#### (Wadi El Rayan Waterfalls)

Last week, our class went on a trip to the waterfalls at Wad El Rayan It was beautiful! There are two lakes there. One at the top of the waterfalls and one at the bottom. The waterfalls are 67 meters high, so the sound or water falling is very loud. We couldn't hear our teacher talking very well! We learned that the water comes from an pasis in the desert.

#### Unit (4)

- 1) Listen and choose the correct answer.
- 1) planets

- 2) important
- 3) problems
- 4) fun
- -) Listen and choose the correct answer
- 1) Dilot

21 dad

31 planes

- 4) circle
- 2) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.
- ti fail

2) float

3, Sun

- 4) important
- -) Read and complete the text with words from the box
- t) felling
- 2) scientist
- 3) clocks 4) years
- Read the text then answer the questions.
- A)Choose the correct answer.
- 1) robot
- 2) English
- 3) Japanese
- B)Answer the following questions.
- 4) in the day
- 5) He wanted to be an engineer.
- 4) Choose the correct answer. (Vocabulary)
- 1) pilot

7) pull

- 2, astronaut
- 3) engineer

- 4) brakes
- 5, push
  - 6) inventor
- 8) Wings 10: Hr
  - 11: in
- 12) astronaul

9) See you soon

- 13) Friction 14) push
- -) Choose the correct answer. (Grammar)
- ti didn't
- 2) can
- 3) Will
- 4) isn't

- 5) isn't 9) with
- 6) does 10) did
- 11) is

7) Won'l

8) can

- 13) Wont
- 14) can't

# **Model Answers**

# 5) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- I put the time to talk to my friends. Abbas Ibn Firnas was a great inventor.
- The children flew up into the air
- In Inere gravity in space?

# 6) Write an email of FIFTY (50) words

- To Salia
- From: Anas Subject: Future Job

Im very happy to write this email to you I'd like to tell you about my future job I want to be a teacher. It is an nteresting job. When I will be a teacher I will work with merchildren. I will work hard at school to help my pupis understand easily.

# .) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(Gravity)

Gravity is what makes things fall to the ground It is he force that makes leaves fall to the ground in fall and not float above the tree. When this boy , cmps on the bed gravity brings him down and stops him floating up into the air. It is also the force that keeps the planets moving around the sun

#### Exams

## (1) محافظة الفليوبية

- 1) Listen and choose the correct answer.
- 2) recorded 1) warm
- 4) variety 3) near
- 2) Read and complete the text with words from the box.
- 1) Nite

2) made

3) sand

- 4) waterfalls
- 3) Read the text then answer the questions.

#### A)Choose the correct answer

- 1) can
- 2) countless
- oxygen

#### B)Answer the following questions.

- 4) To serve a common purpose growth reproduction and survival.
- 5) Between the blood and lungs.
- 4) The Reader.

### A)Road and write T (True) or F (False).

- NF
- 2) F
- 4) T

#### B)(emplete the following sentences. 1) plants

- 2) turties
- 5) Choose the correct answer.
- 1) must 5) Who
- 2) haven't 6) Has
- 3) go
- 4) would

- 6) Put the words in the correct order to make seatences.
- 1) Global warming is dangerous for the Earth
- 2) Mount Kilimanjaro in Africa is the talles, mountain
- 3) There is so much beauty in the Amazon rainforest
- 7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

#### (Natural resources,

There are two kind of resources. They are renewable and non-renewable. Renewable energy like sun and wind They are clean and never run out. Solar energy is renewable energy Non-renewable energy isn't clean. When we burn fossil fuels, we can't use them again

### (2) إدارة كوم حمادة

- 1) Listen and choose the correct answer.
- 1) Sinai

2) forest

3) salt

- 4) roots
- 2) Read and complete the text with words from the box
- 1) important 2) cycle
- 3) regularly
- 3) Read the text they answer the questions
- A)Choose the correct answer.
- 1) Amazon Rainforest
- 2) positive 3) carbon

### B)Answer the following questions.

- 4) The Amazon
- 5) From the majestic Amazon River
- 4) The Reader.

## A)Read and write T (True) or F (False)

- 21 F
- a E 31 T

### B)Complete the following sentences.

- 1) mother
- 2) Gemal
- 5) Choose the correct answer.
- t) where
- 2) pecause
- 3) for
- 5) had
- 6) didn1
- 6) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.
- 1) We met a man who works in a garden
- 2) Have you ever travel ed on a ship?
- 3) Kamal's parents are storm-chasers
- 7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

## (A job you would like to do in the future)

I'd like to be a doctor when I grow up. When I'm a doctor I can help and examine patients I can give them medicine to feel better. I'l work in a hospital. I'll travel abroad to complete my study. I'll help the chanty which takes care of the sick.

#### 4) The Reader. (3) keljő lebe A)Read and write T (True) or F (False). 1) Listen and choose the correct answer. 2) T 3) T n F 4) T 1) engineer 2) maths 8)Complete the following sentences. 3) interesting 4) roads 2) soft 1) mother 2) Read and complete the text with words from the box. 5) Choose the correct answer. 1) Honey 2) sweet 3) medicine 4) hives 3) ever 1) where 3) Read the text then answer the questions. 5) Although 6) tall 4) to have A) Choose the correct answer. 6) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences. 1) two 2) chairs 3) Friday 1) He is visiting his old friend B)Answer the following questions. 2) It's important to have a healthy diet. 4) A carpenter. 5) At 6 o'clock. 3) If you study hard, you'l succeed 4) The Reader. 7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about: A)Read and write T (True) or F (False). (Cotton) 2) F 4) T Cotton is a very important crop. Farmers grow it in B)Complete the following sentences. the Nile Delta. People make clothes from it. The land in 1) mother 2) Salty 5) Choose the correct answer. Egypt is good for growing cotton. 1) who (5) إدارة بندر كفر الدوار 2) and 3) eaten 4) see 5) traveled -1) Listen and choose the correct answer. 6) can t 6) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences. 1) pilot 2) gravity She has already fed the hens 3, stars 4) plants 2) Where did you go yesterday, Hany? 2) Read and complete the text with words from the box. 3) We must wait for the rain? 1) change 2) into 1 7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about. 3) solid 4. Hauid (A school trip 3) Read the text then answer the questions. Last week, I went to the museum with my friends A)Choose the correct answer. We went there by the school bus. We took photos of the 1) should 2) safe · 3) dirty objects there. We had nice time. We came back in the B)Answer the following questions. evening. We were very happy. 4) To walk, relax and breathe fresh air Flowers, trees and grass. (4) محافظة القليونية 4) The Reader. 1) Listen and choose the correct answer. A)Read and write T (True) or F (False) 1) park 2) salt water 11 T 1 2) F 3) protect 4) T 4) trip B) Complete the following sentences 2) Read and complete the text with words from the box. 1) salty 2) hot 1) healthy 2) exercise Choose the correct answer. 3) wonders 4) road 1) and 2) where 3) Read the text then answer the questions. 3) beats 4) is A) (hoose the correct answer. 5) because 6) could 6) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences. 2) sweet 1) bees 3) necessary 1) A chair is made of wood. B) Answer the following questions. 2) Emad visited his uncle 4) Recause it could be used for many things. 3) Why is the sun important? 5) You can put honey on cuts.

# **Model Answers**

# 7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

I'd like to be an engineer. So I need to study hard. When I become an engineer, I will wear a helmet to protect my head. I'll help to build bridges and roads.

## (6) إدارة الغردقة

- 1) Listen and choose the correct answer. 2) Red Sea
- 1) family 4) swimming
- 2) Read and complete the text with words from the box.
- 4) interesting 1) go
- 3] Read the text then answer the questions.
- A)Choose the correct answer.
- 3) eleven 2) art 1) cousin
- B)Answer the following questions.
- 4) He likes painting.
- 5) Adel and Ali.
- 4) The Reader.
- A)Read and write T (True) or F (False).
  - 2) T
- 4) T

## B) Complete the following sentences.

- 2) salty 1) fast
- 5) Choose the correct answer.
- 2) who 1) made
- 3) beautiful
- 4) visit
- 5) can't
- 6) but

## 6) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1) I didn't meet my friend yesterday.
- 2) Mangrove trees grow in salt water.
- 3) Have you ever traveled to Cairo?
- 7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

#### ( How to keep healthy )

Health is very important. So I eat lots of fruit and vegetables. They are good for our health, I should do exercise every week. I should drink a lot of water too.

#### Exam (7)

- 1) Listen and choose the correct answer. ~
- 1) environment
- 2) marine

3) roots

- 4) home
- 2) Read and complete the text with words from the box.
- 1) astronaut
  - 2) planets
- 3) problems
- 4) float
- 3) Read the text then answer the questions:
- A)(hoose the correct answer.
- 1) playing video games
- 2) schools
- 3) slow

- B) Answer the following questions.
- 1) Football.
- 2) His fans.
- 4) The Reader.
- A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).
- 1) T
- 2) F

4) F

- B) Complete the following sentences.
- 1) animals 2) daffodil
- 5) Choose the correct answer.
- 1) can
  - 2 was
- 3) can't

- 4) who
- 5) liked
- 6) wouldn't
- 6) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.
- 1) The parts of the forest interact with the ecosystem.
- 2) How often does your heart beat?
- 3) Can we catch a rabbit to eat?
- 7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

#### (Rain)

Rain is very important for living things. It's important for plants too. When rain falls, we can grow plants. We need rain as humans for drinking and washing. Animals need water, too. All living-things need water.

#### Exam (8)

- 1) Listen and choose the correct answer.
- 1) plants
- 2) arteries

- 3) veins
- 4) carbon dioxide
- Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.
- 1) mountains 2) found
- 3) home
- 3) Read the text then answer the questions.
- A)Choose the correct answer.
- 2) old
- 1) honey
- 3) bees
- B) Answer the following questions.
- 4) The ancient Egyptians.
- 5) For making baskets and sandals.
- 4) The Reader.
- A)Read and write T (True) or F (False).
- 1) T
- 2) F
- 4) F
- B)Complete the following sentences.
- 2) steep
- 5) Choose the correct answer.
  - 3) met
- 1) who
- 2) been 5) which
- 6) went
- 6) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.
- 1) The Ngorongoro Crater is 260 square kilometers.
- 2) What lives in mangeove forests?
- 3) Has Mr Kamal traveled to the USA?

#### 3) Read the text then answer the questions, 7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about: A) Choose the correct answer. (An ecosystem) An ecosystem is all the animals and plants in an 1) astronaut 2) gravity 3) sink area. It can be as small as a pond or as big as a forest. In B)Answer the following questions an ecosystem, living things such as plants and animals 4) To understand our own planet and they help us interact with non-living things. The different species in solve some of Earth's problems. an ecosystem makes a community and they all need 5) Because they live there without gravity. each other to survive. Exam (9) 4) The Reader. A) Read and write T (True or F , False) 1) Listen and choose the correct answer. 1) three . Africa DIT 3) difficult J 109 S)Complete the following sentences. 4) T 2) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box. 1) hot days 2 daffodil 1) been : Have 5) Choose the correct answer. 3) haven't . Which 2) will 3 and 3) Read the text then answer the questions. 4) went 5 went 6 Who A) Choose the correct answer. 6) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences. 1) Last year 2 Neva 3 trip 1) What would happen if there was no gravity? B) Answer the following questions. 2 I like visiting the park. 4) It is in St Petersburg in Russia. 3) How will you help the environment? Because he had to walk a lot. 7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about: 4) The Reader. (What do you want to be?) I want to be an astronaut. It is important to study A)Read and write T (True) or F (Faise). other planets. I'm interested in stars. I like to work in a 2) T space station. If we live without gravity, we will float all B) Complete the following sentences: the time. 1) salty 2) mangrove Exam (11) 5) Choose the correct answer. 1) Listen and choose the correct answer. 11 ever 2 but have bees 4) where expensive s won't will call natural sweet 6) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences. Read and complete the dialog with words from the box. What can we do with natural resources? 1 been Why They don't look like normal shoes. 3 train family 3 There isn't any coffee in the cupboard. 3) Read the text then answer the questions. 7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about: A) Choose the correct answer. (Natural Wordens) The Sahara Desert is the largest hot desert in the 1 city much 2 restaurant world. It covers eleven countries. Mount kilimanjaro is B) Answer the following questions. made of three volcanoes. It is the tallest mountain in Where the chances of work are found. Africa. People like to climb it. Many people 4) The Reader. Exam (10) A)Read and write T (True) or E (Faise) 1) Listen and choose the correct answer. T 21F friend 2) sad B) Complete the following sentences. trees 41 food 1) water 2 steep 2) Read and complete the text with words from the box. 5) Choose the correct answer. bees 2 Honey 3) because 4) sweet 3 studies -1) and 2) traveled 6) decided 4) liked

Model Anous

5) doesn't

# Model Answers

# fut the words in the correct order to make sentences. Have you traveled on a ship?

Cairo is the largest city in Egypt.

Storm chasers study extreme weather. 1) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Resources in ancient Egypt)

The ancient Egyptians were successful because The another They used flax to y nad your clothes. They used papyrus to make paper. They used copper for making pots.

1) Listen and choose the correct answer. 2) protect

1) salt

4) flowers

2) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box. 3) carbon dioxide

n went

4) What

3) friends 3) Read the text then answer the questions.

A) (hoose the correct answer.

1) lovely

2) fine

3) season

B)Answer the following questions.

4) He went to Alexandria.

5) To hire a boat.

4) The Reader.

### A)Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1) T

2) F

41 T

#### B)Complete the following sentences.

1) plants

2) acacia

5) Choose the correct answer.

1) because

2) had

3) will

4 yet

5) isn't

6) wasn't

### 6) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

We met a man who works in a garden.

2) What do you think is a natural resource?

3) People came and cut down some trees.

7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

#### (The mangrove trees)

ftie mangrove trees are very important. They protect the marine ecosystem. The leaves of the mangrove trees are thick. Bees are buzzing there. They live in hives to make honey.

#### Exam (13)

## 1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1) ash

· 2 fertile

3) farmers

4) happy

## 2) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

I) fine

2 What

3) Do

4) Stories

#### 3) Read the text then answer the questions.

#### A) Choose the correct answer.

1) engineer

21 nish

3 English

#### B) Answer the following questions.

- 4) When he was 13.
- 5) Science and math.
- 4) The Reader.

#### A)Read and write T (True) or F (False).

2) F

4) T

#### B) Complete the following sentences.

1) mountain

#### 5) Choose the correct answer.

1) traveled

2) aren't

3) would

4) who

5) where

6) have bought

### 6) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1) Have you ridden a bike before?

2) People used mud to build houses

3) Life is going to be better here.

### 7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about: .

(Sunlight)

Humans need sunlight. We can't make our own foods without sunlight. We get vitamin D from sunlight. This can help protect us from getting sick. Sunlight also makes a lot of people feel happy

#### Exam (14)

### 1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1) summer

2) Marsa Alam

3) car

4) mine

## 2) Read and complete the text with words from the box-

1) Archaeologists

2) natural

3) world

4) volcano

## 3) Read the text thou answer the questions.

A) Choose the correct answer.

2) small

3) tables

## B)Answer the following questions.

- 4) He is a carpenter.
- 5) He gets up at six o'clock.

### 7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about: (A picnic)

Yesterday I went on a picnic. I went with my family. it was fun. I played football. I was very happy. I had a nice time there. I enjoyed the picnic very much.

### Exam (16)

- 1) Listen and choose the correct answer,
- 1) metal

2) easy

3) tools

- 4) museums
- 2) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

2) twice

3) healthy

- 4) What
- 3) Read the text then answer the questions.
- A)Choose the correct answer.
- 1) useful
- 2) job
- 3) English
- B)Answer the following questions.
- 4) It gives you the real chance to read and know how other people think and live.
- 5) All over the world.
- 4) The Reader.
- A)Read and write T (True) or F (False).
- 1) T
- 2) F

- B)Complete the following sentences:
- 1) dugong

- 2 hooves
- 5) Choose the correct answer.
- 1) where
- 2) will push
- 3) sold

- 4) bought
- 5) can
- 6) so
- 6) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.
- 1) Have you visited the desert?
- 2) We get vitamin D from sunlight.
- It's important to eat healthy food.
- 7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

#### (Healthy Diet)

A healthy diet is important for everyone. You shouldn't have a lot of sugar. You should eat fruits and vegetables to get vitamins. Carbohydrates give us energy. Eating the right food is good for us.